ŠKODA

OWNER´S MANUAL

ŠKODA Yeti

Preface

You have opted for a ŠKODA – our sincere thanks for your confidence in us.

This manual contains instructions about the vehicle operation, important information about safety, vehicle care, maintenance and self-help and technical vehicle data.

Please do not read just this Owner's Manual, but also read the Infotainment manual carefully. The procedure in accordance with the two instructions is a prerequisite for the correct use of the vehicle.

When using the vehicle, the general binding country-specific legal requirements (e.g. transporting children, deactivating the airbag, tyre use, road traffic, etc.) must always be observed.

We hope you enjoy driving your ŠKODA, and wish you a pleasant journey at all times.

Your ŠKODA AUTO a.s. (hereinafter referred to as ŠKODA or manufacturer)

Table of Contents

Do-it-yourself

Technical data

Index

Board literature

You will always find this **Owner's Manual** and the **Service Plan** included in the on-board literature for your vehicle.

Depending on your vehicle equipment, the on-board literature may also include the **Radio instruction manual**, the **Infotainment system manual**and in some countries also the **On the road** brochure.

Owner´s Manual
These Owner´s Manual apply to all **body variants** of the vehicle and all related **model versions** as well as all **equipment levels**.

This owner's manual describes **all possible equipment variants** without identifying them as special equipment, model variants or market-dependent equipment. Consequently, this vehicle **does not contain all of the equipment components** described in this Owner's Manual.

The level of equipment in your vehicle refers to your purchase contract for the vehicle. For any questions regarding the scope of equipment, please contact a ŠKODA Partner.

The **Pictures** in this manual are for illustrative purposes only. The illustrations can differ in minor details from your vehicle; they are only intended to provide general information.

ŠKODA AUTO a.s. pursues a policy of ongoing product and model development with all vehicles. Changes in terms of supply scope are possible at any time with regard to design, equipment and technology. The information listed in this operating manual corresponds to the information available at the time of going to press.

Therefore legal claims cannot be made based on the technical data, illustrations and information contained in this Owner's Manual.

We recommend that **web pages** that are referred to in this Owner's Manual are displayed using the classic view. Not all necessary information may be displayed correctly if the mobile view is chosen.

Service schedule
The service schedule includes the documentation of the vehicle handover, warranty information and service events.

The radio instruction manual
The radio instruction manual describes the operation of the radio, and in some cases various functions and vehicle systems.

Infotainment Owner´s Manual
The Infotainment manual contains a description of the Infotainment service and possibly also some functions and vehicle systems.

On-the-road brochure
The On-the-road brochure contains the importer's customer service number and the service number in the individual countries as well as the emergency numbers.

Online user manuals

Fig. 1

Using this QR code, the web page with a model overview of the ŠKODA brand is opened.

The page can also be accessed by entering the following address in the web browser.

http://www.skoda-auto.com/en/mini-apps/owners-manuals/

- ▸ Select the desired model - a menu for the user manuals is displayed.
- ▸ Select the construction period as well as the language.
- ▸ Select the desired manual - it can be displayed either online or in pdf format.

Notes

Terms used
The on-board literature contains the following terms relating to the service work for your vehicle.

"Specialist" - Workshop - a workshop that carries out specialist service tasks for ŠKODA vehicles. A specialist can be a ŠKODA Partner, a ŠKODA Service Partner, or an independent workshop.

"ŠKODA service partner" - a workshop that has been contractually authorized by the manufacturer or its sales partner to perform service tasks on ŠKODA vehicles and to sell ŠKODA Genuine Parts.

"ŠKODA partner" - a company that has been authorized by the manufacturer or its sales partner to sell new ŠKODA vehicles and, when applicable, to service them using ŠKODA Genuine Parts and sell ŠKODA Genuine Parts.

Explanation of symbols
An overview of the symbols used in the instruction manual and a brief explanation of their meaning.

- Reference to the introductory module of a chapter with important information and safety warnings
- ▶ Continuation of the module on the next page
- Situations in which the vehicle must be stopped as soon as possible
- ® Trademark
- Telephone operation in the MAXI DOT display
- Text display in the segment display

WARNING
Texts with this symbol draw attention to threats of a **serious accident, injury or loss of life**.

CAUTION
Texts with this symbol draw attention to the risk of vehicle damage or possible inoperability of some systems.

For the sake of the environment
Texts with this symbol contain information on environmental protection as well as tips for economical operation.

Note
Texts with this symbol contain additional information.

Structure and more information about the Owner's Manual

Structure of the manual
The operating manual is hierarchically divided into the following areas.

- **Section** (e.g. Safety) - the title of the Section is always indicated at the lower left side
  - **Main chapters** (e.g. Airbag system) - the title of the main chapter is always indicated at the lower right side
    - **Chapter** (e.g. Airbag overview)
      - 🕮 **Introduction to the topic** – Module Overview within the chapter, introductory information about the chapter content, if necessary, valid for the entire chapter notes
      - **Module** (e.g. Front airbags)

Information search
When searching for information in the Owner´s Manual, we recommend using the **Index** at the end of the Owner's Manual.

Direction indications
All direction indications such as "left", "right", "front", "rear" relate to the forward direction of travel of the vehicle.

Units
The volume, weight, speed and length data are given in metric units, unless otherwise indicated.

Display
In this owner's manual, the MAXI DOT display is used as the display in the instrument cluster unless otherwise stated.

Abbreviations

Abbreviation	Definition
rpm	Engine revolutions per minute
A2DP	a Bluetooth software profile for a one-way transfer of audio data
ABS	Anti-lock brake system
AF	Multi-purpose vehicles
AFS	Adaptive headlights
AG	Automatic gearbox
AGM	Vehicle battery type
APN	An access point name for the Wi-Fi connection
TCS	Traction control
CO_2	Carbon dioxide
COC	Declaration of conformity
DPF	Diesel particle filter
DSG	Automatic double clutch gearbox
DSR	Active driver-steering recommendation
EDL	Electronic differential lock
ECE	Economic Commission for Europe
EPC	EPC fault light
ESC	Electronic Stability Control
RD	Rim depth
EU	European Union
GSM	Global system for mobile communications
HBA	Hydraulic brake assist
HFP	Connection of a mobile device by means of its Bluetooth® profile
HHC	Uphill start assist
KESSY	keyless unlocking, starting and locking
kW	Kilowatt, measuring unit for output
MDI	Inputs for connecting external devices
MFD	Multifunction display
MG	Manual gearbox
MPI	Gasoline engine with a multi-point fuel injection
N1	Panel van intended exclusively or mainly for the transportation of goods
NiMH	Nickel metal hydride
Nm	Newton meter, measuring unit for the engine torque
PIN	personal identification number
rSAP	a Bluetooth ® software profile for the remote transmission of the SIM data
SCR	Diesel engine for which the AdBlue ® solution is required
SIM card	a card for the identification of the mobile network operator
SSP	Connect two devices using Bluetooth ® profile
TDI CR	Diesel engine with turbo-charging and common rail injection system
TSA	Trailer stabilisation
TSI	Petrol engine with turbo charging and direct injection
UMTS	the next generation of the GSM network (3G)
VIN	Vehicle identification number
W	Watt, unit of power
Wi-Fi	wireless data network
WLAN	wireless connection of electronic devices for data transfer (WiFi)
WPS	wireless connection of devices for electronic data transfer (WiFi) using an automatically generated key

Safety

Passive Safety

General information

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

In this section of the instructions you will find important information, tips and notes on the subject of passive safety.

We have combined everything here which you should be familiar with, for example, regarding seat belts, airbags, safety of children and anything similar.

You can find further information on safety concerning you and those travelling with you in the following chapters of this owner's manual.

The complete on-board literature should therefore always be in the vehicle. This applies in particular, if you rent out or sell the vehicle.

Before setting off

For your own safety and the safety of the people travelling with you, please pay attention to the following points before setting off.

- Ensure that the lighting and the turn signal system are functioning properly.
- Ensure that the function of the wipers and the condition of the wiper blades are free of any defects.
- Ensure that all of the windows offer good visibility to the outside.
- Adjust the rear-view mirror so that vision to the rear is guaranteed.
- Ensure that the mirrors are not covered.
- Check the tyre inflation pressure.
- Check the engine oil, brake fluid and coolant level.
- Secure all items of luggage.
- Do not exceed the permissible axle loads and permissible gross weight of the vehicle.
- Close all doors as well as the bonnet and boot lid.
- Ensure that no objects can obstruct the pedals.
- Protect children in suitable child seats with correctly fastened seat belts » page 21, *Transporting children safely*.
- Adopt the correct seated position » page 8, *Correct and safe seated position*. Tell your passengers to assume the correct seated position.

Driving safety

The **driver** is fully responsible for himself and passengers, especially children. If your driving safety is effected, you place yourself and the oncoming traffic at risk.

The following guidelines must therefore be observed.

- Do not become distracted from concentrating on the traffic situation, (e.g. by your passengers or mobile phone calls).
- Never drive when your driving ability is impaired, (e.g. due to medication, alcohol or drugs).
- Keep to the traffic regulations and the permissible speed limit.
- Always adjust the driving speed to the road, traffic and weather conditions.
- Take regular breaks on long journeys (at least every two hours).

The following list contains instructions for the **Passenger** which, if not observed, may cause serious injuries or death.

- Do not lean against the dash panel.
- Do not put your feet on the dash panel.

The following list contains instructions for all **Passengers** which, if not observed, may cause serious injuries or death.

- Do not sit only on the front part of the seat.
- Do not sit facing to the side.
- Do not lean out of the window.
- Do not put your limbs out of the window.
- Do not put your feet on the seat cushion.

Correct and safe seated position

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

WARNING

- The front seats and all head restraints must be adjusted to match the body size at all times and the seat belt must always be fastened properly to provide the most effective levels of protection to the passengers.
- Each occupant must correctly fasten the seat belt belonging to the seat. Children must be fastened » page 21, *Transporting children safely* with a suitable restraint system.
- By sitting incorrectly, the occupant is risking life-threatening injuries.
- The seat backrests must not be tilted too far back when driving, as this will impair the function of the seat belts and of the airbag system – risk of injury!

Correct seat position of the driver

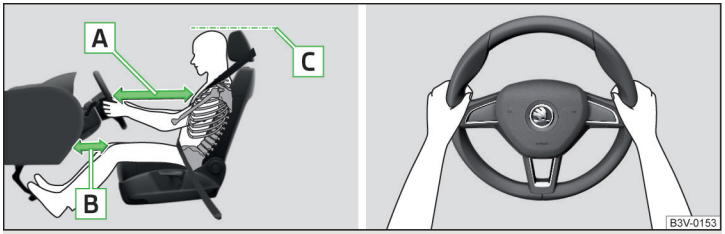

Fig. 2 **Correct seated position for the driver/correct steering wheel position**

Read and observe ! on page 9 first.

For your own safety and to reduce the risk of injury in the event of an accident, the following instructions must be observed.

✓ Adjust the driver's seat in the forward/back direction so that the pedals can be fully depressed with slightly bent legs.

✓ For vehicles with driver knee air-bag adjust the driver's seat in a forward/back direction so that there is a gap of at least 10 cm between the legs and the dash panel in the vicinity of the knee airbag - B » Fig. 2.

✓ Adjust the seat backrest so that the highest point of the steering wheel can be reached with your arms at a slight angle.

✓ Adjust the steering wheel so that the distance A between the steering wheel and your chest is at least 25 cm » Fig. 2.

✓ Adjust the head restraint so that the top edge of the head restraint is at the same level as the upper part of your head C » Fig. 2.

✓ Correctly fasten the seat belt » page 11, *Using seat belts*.

WARNING

- Always assume the correct seated position before setting off and do not change this position while driving. Also advise your passengers to adopt the correct seated position and not to change this position while the car is moving.
- Maintain a distance of at least 25 cm from the steering wheel, and a distance of at least 10 cm between the legs and the dash panel at the height of the knee airbag. Not maintaining this minimum distance will mean that the airbag system will not be able to properly protect you - hazard!
- When driving, hold the steering wheel with both hands firmly on the outer edge in the "9 o'clock" and "3 o'clock" position » Fig. 2. Never hold the steering wheel in the "12 o'clock" position or in any other way (e.g. in the middle, inner edge of the steering wheel or similar). In such cases, you could severely injure the arms, hands and head when the driver airbag is deployed.
- Ensure that there are no objects in the driver's footwell, as these may get caught in the pedal apparatus when driving or braking. You would then no longer be able to operate the clutch, brake or acceleration pedals.

Adjusting the steering wheel position

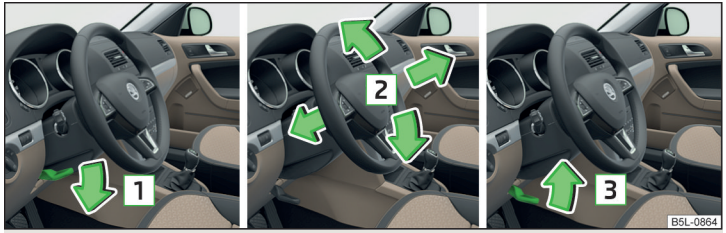

Fig. 3 **Adjusting the steering wheel position**

Read and observe ! on page 9 first.

The height and forward/back position of the steering wheel can be adjusted. ▸

› Swing the safety lever under the steering wheel in the direction of arrow 1 » Fig. 3.
› Adjust the steering wheel to the desired position. The steering wheel can be adjusted in direction of arrow 2.
› Pull the holder in arrow direction 3 until the stop.

WARNING

▪ Never adjust the steering wheel when the vehicle is moving only when the vehicle is stationary!
▪ The safety lever must be locked so that the steering wheel cannot accidentally change position – risk of accident!

Correct seated position for the front passenger

Read and observe ! on page 9 first.

For passenger safety and to reduce the risk of injury in an accident, the following instructions must be observed.

✓ Position the front passenger seat back as far as possible. The front passenger must maintain a distance of at least 25 cm to the dash panel so that the airbag offers the greatest possible safety if it is deployed.
✓ Adjust the head restraint so that the top edge of the head restraint is at the same level as the upper part of your head C » Fig. 2 *on page 9*.
✓ Correctly fasten the seat belt » page 11.

In exceptional cases the front passenger airbag can be deactivated » page 19, *Deactivating airbags*.

WARNING

▪ Maintain a distance of at least 25 cm to the dash panel. Not maintaining this minimum distance will mean that the airbag system will not be able to properly protect you - hazard!
▪ Always keep your feet in the footwell when the car is being driven – never place your feet on the instrument panel, out of the window or on the surface of the seats! You will be exposed to increased risk of injury if it becomes necessary to apply the brake or in the event of an accident. If an airbag is deployed, you could suffer fatal injuries by adopting an incorrect seated position!

Correct seated position for the passengers in the rear seats

Read and observe ! on page 9 first.

To reduce the risk of injury in the event of a sudden braking manoeuvre or an accident, the occupants on the rear seats must observe the following.

✓ Adjust the head restraint so that the top edge of the head restraint is at the same level as the upper part of the head C » Fig. 2 *on page 9*.
✓ Correctly fasten the seat belt » page 11, *Using seat belts*.
✓ Use a suitable child restraint system if transporting children in the vehicle » page 21, *Transporting children safely*.

Seat belts

Using seat belts

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Seat belts that are fastened correctly offer good protection in the event of an accident. They reduce the risk of an injury and increase the chance of survival in the event of a major accident.

Properly fastened seat belts hold occupants to correctly set seats in the right seat position.

Particular safety aspects must be observed when transporting children in the vehicle » page 21.

WARNING

- Fasten your seat belt before each journey - even when driving in town! This also applies to other passengers - there is a danger of injury!
- Maximum seat belt protection is only achieved if you are correctly seated » page 8, *Correct and safe seated position*.
- The seat backrests of the front seats must not be tilted too far to the rear otherwise the seatbelts can lose their effectiveness.

WARNING

Information on the correct routing of the belt

- Always ensure that the webbing of the seat belts is properly routed. Seat belts which are not correctly adjusted can themselves cause injuries even in minor accidents.
- Adjust the height of the belt in such a way that the shoulder part of the belt is roughly positioned across the middle of your shoulder - on no account across your neck.

WARNING (Continued)

- A seat belt which is hanging too loose can result in injuries as your body is moved forward by the kinetic energy produced in an accident and is then suddenly held firm by the belt.
- The belt webbing must not run across solid or fragile objects (e.g. spectacles, ball-point pens, bunches of keys etc.). Such objects can cause injury.

WARNING

Information on dealing with the safety belts

- The belt webbing must not be jammed in-between at any point or twisted, or chafe against any sharp edges.
- Make sure you do not catch the seat belt in the door when closing it.

WARNING

Information on the proper use of safety belts

- No two persons (also not children) should ever use a single seat belt together.
- The lock tongue should only be inserted into the lock which is the correct one for your seat. Wrong use of the safety belt will reduce its capacity to protect and the risk of injury increases.
- The slot of the belt tongue must not be blocked, otherwise the belt tongue will not lock in place properly.
- Many layers of clothing and loose clothing (e. g. a winter coat over a jacket) do not allow you to be correctly seated and impairs proper operation of the seat belts.
- Do not use clamps or other objects to adjust seat belts (e.g. for shortening the belts for smaller persons).
- The seat belts for the rear seats can only fulfil their function reliably when the seat backrests are correctly locked into position » page 81.

WARNING

Information on the care and maintenance of safety belts

- The belt webbing must always be kept clean. Soiled belt webbing may impair proper operation of the inertia reel » page 159.
- The seat belts must not be removed or changed in any way. Do not attempt to repair the seat belts yourself.

WARNING (Continued)

- Check the condition of all the seat belts on a regular basis. If any damage to the seat belts, seat belt connections, inertia reel or the lock is detected, the relevant seat belt must be replaced by a specialist garage.
- Damaged seat belts which have been subjected to stress in an accident and were therefore stretched, must be replaced – this is best done by a specialist garage. The anchorage points of the belts must also be inspected. The anchorage points for the belts should also be checked.

The physical principle of a head-on collision

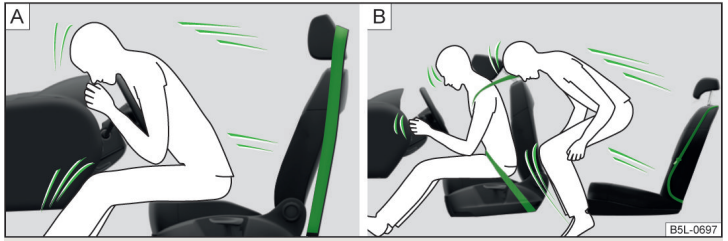

Fig. 4 **Driver without a fastened seat belt/rear seat passenger without a fastened seat belt**

Read and observe ! on page 11 first.

Motion energy, so-called kinetic energy, is produced as soon as the vehicle is moving, both for the vehicle and its occupants.

The magnitude of this kinetic energy depends essentially on the speed at which the vehicle is travelling and on the weight of the vehicle including the occupants.

Doubling the speed of the vehicle from 25 km/h up to 50 km/hour increases the kinetic energy four times.

For example, a person's weight of 80 kg "increases" to 4.8 tons (4800 kg) at 50 km/h.

In the event of a frontal collision, occupants of the car not wearing a seat belt are thrown forward and strike parts of the interior of the car, such as the steering wheel, dash panel, windscreen in ways which cannot be controlled » Fig. 4 - A. In certain circumstances you could even be thrown out of the vehicle, which could cause life threatening or even fatal injuries.

Rear seat passengers who have not fastened their seat belts are a danger not only to themselves but also to those seated at the front » Fig. 4 – B.

Correct routing of seat belt

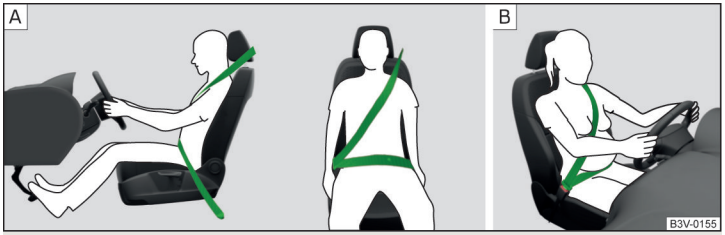

Fig. 5 **Routing of belt webbing over the shoulders and the lap belt/Routing of belt webbing for an expectant mother**

Fig. 6
Front seat: Seat belt height adjuster

Read and observe ! on page 11 first.

It is important that the belt is properly routed to ensure seat belts offer the maximum protection.

The shoulder part of the seat belt must never run across the neck but must roughly run over the middle of the shoulder and fit snugly against the chest. The lap part of the belt must run across the pelvis, must not be positioned across the stomach and must always fit snugly » Fig. 5 - A.

Seat belt height adjusters for front seats
The seat belt height adjuster makes it possible to adjust the routing of the front seat belts in the area of the shoulder to the body size.

› Press the height adjuster and move to the desired position » Fig. 6.
› Then pull firmly on the belt to ensure that the seat belt height adjuster has correctly locked in place.

Seat belts with pregnant women
Expectant women must also always wear a seat belt. This is the only way of ensuring optimal protection for the unborn child.

With pregnant women, the lap part of the belt must be positioned as low as possible on the pelvis to avoid exerting any pressure on the lower abdomen » Fig. 5 - B.

Fastening and unfastening seat belts

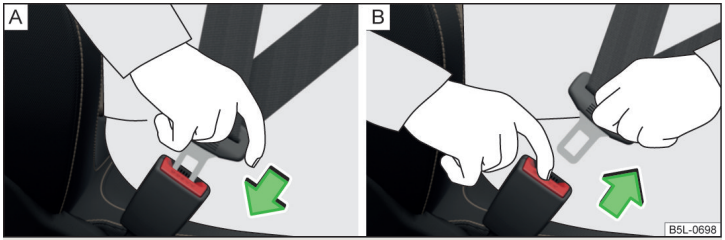

Fig. 7 **Fastening/unfastening the seat belt**

Read and observe ! on page 11 first.

Before using the seat belts the following conditions must be met.

✓ Correctly set head restraint (not for seats with integrated head restraint).
✓ Correctly adjusted seat (applies for the front seats).
✓ Correctly adjusted steering wheel (applies to the Driver's seat).

Fasten
› Use the lock tongue to slowly pull the webbing over your chest and pelvis.
› Insert the lock tongue into the belt buckle » Fig. 7 – A that is part of the seat until it clicks into place.
› Pull on the belt to check that it has engaged correctly in the lock.

Release
Release the seat belt only when the vehicle is stationary.

› Press the red button in the belt buckle » Fig. 7 – B , the lock tongue pops out.
› Manually guide the belt back so that it is easier to fully roll up the webbing, the seat belt does not twist.

! CAUTION
When releasing the seatbelt ensure that the tongue of the lock does not damage the door trim or other parts of the interior.

Seat belt for the rear middle seat

Read and observe ! on page 11 first.

The seat belt for the rear middle seat is anchored in the area of the boot on the left side of the headliner.

Fasten
› Pull the belt with both lock tongues out of the headliner mount.
› Insert the lock tongue at the end of the belt into the belt buckle on the left side until it is heard to lock in place.
› Pull the second lock tongue, which is moveable on the seat belt, over the chest and insert it into the belt buckle on the right side until it is heard to lock in place.
› Pull on the seat belt to check that both lock tongues are securely engaged in the locks.

The belt tongues for the rear middle seat are shaped differently so that they only fit into the correct belt buckle. If you are not able to insert a lock tongue into the wrong belt lock you probably tried to put it into the wrong buckle.

Release
› Take off the safety belt in the reverse order to how you fasten it.
› Guide the belt back by hand so that the webbing rolls up easily, the seat belt is not twisted and the trim panel is not damaged.

WARNING

- After releasing the seat belt hold it tight and let it slowly reel up until both lock tongues lock into the headliner mount and are secured with a magnet - there is a risk of injury.
- Never unlock both lock tongues simultaneously.

Inertia reels and belt tensioners

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Intertia reel

Each seat belt is equipped with an inertia reel. When pulling slowly on the seat belt, the belt can move freely.

When pulling sharply on the seat belt, the movement is locked by the inertia reel. The belts also lock when full braking, when the car accelerates, when driving downhill and when cornering.

WARNING

If the seat belt does not lock when pulling sharply on it, have it inspected immediately by a specialist garage.

Belt tensioners

Safety for the driver and front passenger **wearing their seat belts** is enhanced by the belt tensioners fitted to the inertia reels of the front three-point seat belts.

If there is a collision the seat belts are tightened by the belt tensioner so that unwanted body motion is prevented.

The three-point seat belts are automatically tensioned in the event of a frontal collision of a certain severity.

The front seat belts are automatically tensioned in the event of a side collision of a certain severity.

Belt tensioners are **not activated** in the event of **minor** frontal, side or rear-end collisions, in the case of a roll-over and also not in accidents in which no major forces are produced.

WARNING

- Any work on the belt tensioner system including removal and installation of system components because of other repair work, must only be carried out by a specialist garage.
- The protective function of the system is only adequate for a single accident. If the belt tensioners have been deployed, it is then necessary to replace the entire system.

Note

- The belt tensioners can also be deployed if the seat belts are not fastened.
- Smoke is generated when the belt tensioners are deployed. This is not an indication of a fire in the vehicle.

Airbag system

Description of the airbag system

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

The airbag system supplements the fastened seat belts and provides additional occupant protection in severe frontal and side collisions.

The functional status of the airbag system is indicated by the indicator light in the instrument cluster » page 37.

WARNING

- **An airbag can only offer you optimal protection in combination with a fastened seat belt.**
- The airbag is not a substitute for the seat belt, but instead forms part of the complete passive vehicle safety concept.
- To ensure passengers are protected with the greatest possible effect when the airbag is deployed, the front seats must be correctly adjusted to match the body size » page 8, *Correct and safe seated position*.
- If you do not fasten the seat belts when driving, lean too far forward or adopt an incorrect seated position, you are exposing yourself to increased risk of injury in the event of an accident.

WARNING

Information on the use of the airbag system

- If there is a fault, have the airbag system checked immediately by a specialist garage. Otherwise, there is a risk of the airbag not being activated in the event of an accident.
- No modifications of any kind must be made to parts of the airbag system.
- Any work on the airbag system including the installation and removal of system components due to other repair work (e.g. removal of the steering wheel) must only be carried out by a specialist garage.
- Never make any changes to the front bumper or the bodywork.
- Do not manipulate individual parts of the airbag system, as this might result in the airbag being deployed.
- The airbag system must then be replaced if the airbag has been deployed.

System description

Read and observe ! on page 15 first.

The inflation of the airbag is carried out in a fraction of a second.

When the airbags are deployed, they fill with gas and inflate.

A grey white or red, non-harmful gas is released when the airbag is inflated. This is perfectly normal and is not an indication of a fire in the vehicle.

Depending on the vehicle equipment, the airbag system consists of the following parts.

- Front airbag for the driver and the front passenger » page 16.
- Driver's knee airbag » page 17.
- Side airbags » page 18.
- Head airbags » page 19.
- Airbag warning light in the instrument cluster » page 37.
- Key switch for the front passenger airbag » page 20.
- Warning light for the front passenger airbag in the middle of the dash panel » page 20.

Airbag deployment

Read and observe ! on page 15 first.

The airbag system is only functional when the ignition is switched on.

Triggering conditions

It is not possible to generally determine which deployment conditions apply to the airbag system in every situation. An important role is played by factors such as the type of object that the vehicle hits (hard/soft), the impact angle, vehicle speed etc.

A decisive factor for the deployment of the airbags is the deceleration which occurs. If the vehicle deceleration which occurs and is measured during the collision remains below the prescribed reference values specified in the control unit, the airbags are not deployed although the vehicle may well suffer severe damage to the bodywork as a consequence of the accident.

The following airbags will be deployed in the event of a severe frontal collision.

- Driver's front airbag.
- Front passenger airbag.
- Driver's knee airbag.

The following airbags will be deployed in the event of a severe side collision.
- Front side airbag on the side of the accident.
- Rear side airbag on the side of the accident.
- Head airbags on the side of the accident.

When an airbag is deployed, the following events occur.
- The interior light comes on (if the automatic operation of the interior light is switched on - switch).
- The hazard warning lights are switched on.
- All doors are unlocked.
- The fuel supply to the engine is interrupted.

When there is no air bag deployment?
With **minor** frontal and side collisions, rear collision, overturning of the vehicle or vehicle roll-over there is no airbag deployment.

Airbag overview

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Front airbags

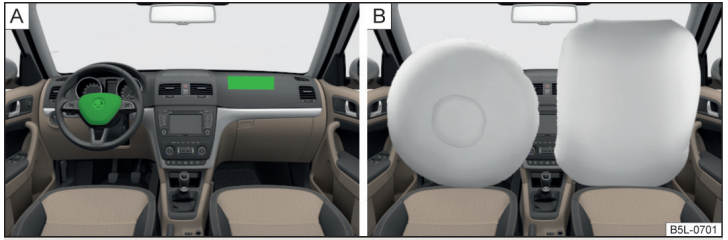

Fig. 8 **Locations of the airbags / gas filled airbags**

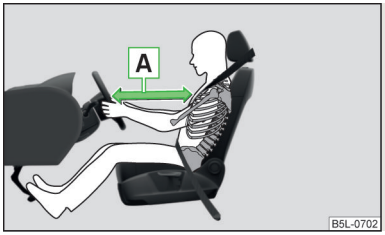

Fig. 9
Safe distance to steering wheel

In the event of a severe frontal collision, the front airbags offer additional protection for the head and chest area of the driver and front passenger.

The driver's front airbag is located in the steering wheel, the front passenger airbag is located in the instrument panel above the glove compartment » Fig. 8 - A .

The airbags inflate in front of the driver and front passenger when they are deployed » Fig. 8 - B. The forward movement of the driver and of the front passenger is cushioned when they make contact with the fully inflated airbag and the risk of injury to head and chest is thus reduced.

WARNING

Information on correct seating position
- It is important that the driver and front passenger maintain a distance of at least 25 cm to the steering wheel or dashboard A » Fig. 9. Not maintaining this minimum distance will mean that the airbag system will not be able to properly protect you - hazard! The front seats and the head restraints must always also be correctly adjusted to match the body size of the occupant.
- The airbag develops enormous forces when triggered, which can lead to injuries if the sitting position or seated position is not correct.
- There must not by any further persons, animals or objects positioned between the front seated occupants and the deployment area of the airbag.

WARNING

Front airbag and transporting children

- Never transport children on the front seat of a vehicle without using a proper restraint system. If airbags are deployed in the event of an accident, the child might suffer severe or even fatal injuries!
- The front passenger airbag must be deactivated if using a rear-facing child seat on the front passenger seat » page 19, *Deactivating airbags*. If this is not done, there is a risk of the child suffering severe or even fatal injuries if the front passenger airbag is deployed.

WARNING

General information

- The steering wheel and the surface of the airbag module in the dash panel on the passenger side must not have stickers attached, be covered or modified in any other way. These parts should only be cleaned with a cloth that is dry or has been moistened with water. No objects (such as cup holders, mobile phone mounts, etc.) are to be attached to the covers of the airbag modules or be located within their immediate vicinity.
- Never place objects on the surface of the front passenger airbag module in the dash panel.

Note

- In vehicles with driver's airbag, the text **AIRBAG** can be found on the steering wheel.
- In vehicles with front passenger airbag, the text **AIRBAG** is located on the dash panel on the passenger side.

Driver's knee airbag

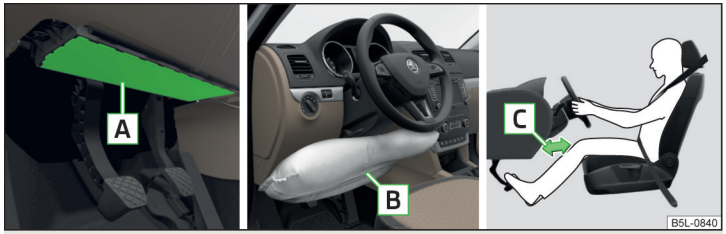

Fig. 10 **Installation of the airbag / Gas-filled Airbag / Safe distance between the legs and the instrument panel**

The driver's knee airbag offers adequate protection for the driver's legs.

The driver's knee airbag A is located in the lower part of the dash panel below the steering column » Fig. 10.

The forward movement of the body is cushioned when it makes contact with the fully inflated airbag B and the risk of injury to the legs of the driver is thus reduced.

WARNING

- Adjust the driver's seat in a forward/back direction so that there is a gap of at least 10 cm between the legs C and the instrument panel in the vicinity of the knee airbag » Fig. 10. If it is not possible to meet this requirement due to your body size, visit a specialist garage.
- The surface of the airbag module in the lower part of the dash panel below the steering column not have stickers attached, be covered or modified in any other way. This part should only be cleaned with a cloth that is dry or has been moistened with water. Nothing may be attached to the cover of the airbag module or located within the immediate vicinity.
- Do not attach any bulky and heavy objects (bunch of keys etc.) to the ignition key. These can be ejected by the knee airbag when it is deployed and can cause injuries.

Note

In vehicles with a driver's knee airbag, a symbol with **AIRBAG** is located on the side panel on the driver's side.

Side airbags

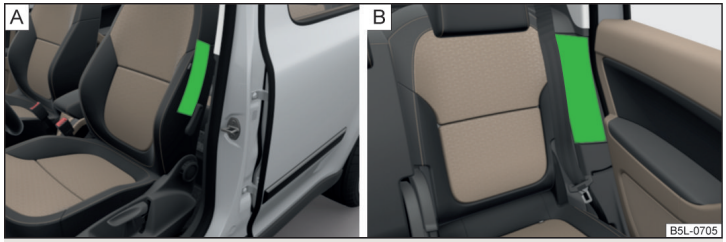

Fig. 11 **Locations of airbags: the front seat/rear**

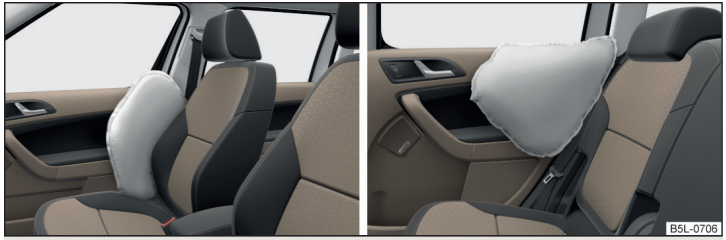

Fig. 12 **Inflated airbags**

In the event of severe side collisions, the side airbags provide additional protection for the upper body (chest, stomach and pelvis) of passengers in the vehicle.

The front side airbags are housed in the upholstery of the seat backrests of the front seats » Fig. 11 - A.

The rear side airbags are located between the entrance area and the seat backrest » Fig. 11- B.

The load of the occupants is cushioned when plunging into the fully inflated airbag » Fig. 12 and the risk of injury to the entire upper body (chest, stomach and pelvis) is reduced on the side facing the door.

WARNING

Information on correct seating position

- Your head should never be positioned in the deployment area of the side airbag. You might suffer severe injuries in the event of an accident. This applies in particular to children who are transported without using a suitable child safety seat » page 23, *Child safety and side airbag*.
- There must not be any further persons, animals or objects positioned between the occupants and the deployment area of the airbag. No accessories, such as cup holders, should be attached to the doors.
- If children adopt an incorrect seated position when travelling, they may be exposed to an increased risk of injury in the event of an accident. This can result in serious injuries » page 21, *Child seat*.

WARNING

- Do not place any objects within the deployment area of the side airbags – risk of injury!
- The airbag system operates using pressure sensors located in the front doors. For this reason, no adjustments may be carried out to the doors or door panels (e.g. installation of additional loudspeakers). Further information » page 151, *Airbags*.
- Ensure that there are no excessive forces, such as violent knocks, kicks etc., impact on the backrests of the seats otherwise the system may be damaged. The side airbags would not be deployed in such a case!
- Any seat or protective covers which you fit to the driver or front passenger seats must only be of the type expressly authorized by ŠKODA. In view of the fact that the airbag inflates out of the backrest of the seat, use of non-approved seat or protective covers would considerably impair the protective function of the side airbag.
- Any damage to the original seat covers in the area of the side airbag module must be repaired immediately by a specialist garage.
- The airbag modules in the front seats must not display any damage, cracks or deep scratches. It is not permissible to use force in order to open the modules.

Note

- In vehicles with side airbags a label with the text AIRBAG is located on the front seat backrests.
- In vehicles with rear side airbags, the word AIRBAG is located between the entrance area and the rear seat rest AIRBAG.

Head airbags

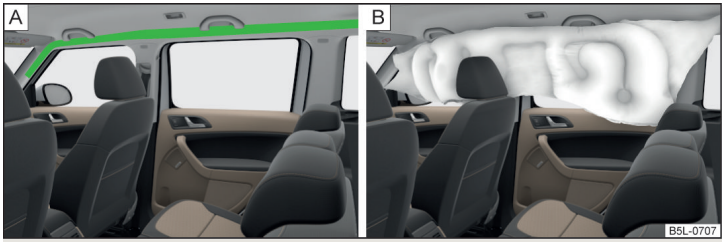

Fig. 13 **Location of the head airbag/gas-filled head airbag**

In the event of a severe side collision, the head airbags offer additional protection for the head and neck area of passengers.

The head airbags are positioned above the doors on both sides of the vehicle interior » Fig. 13 - A.

When deployed, the airbag covers the window area of the front and rear doors, as well as the area of the door pillar » Fig. 13 - B.

Head impact with interior parts is reduced by the inflated head airbag. The reduction in any impact to the head and the resultant minimizing of any movements of the head additionally reduce the risk of injuries to the neck area.

WARNING

- There must not be any objects in the deployment area of the head airbags which might prevent the airbags from inflating properly.
- Only hang light items of clothing on the hooks fitted in the vehicle. Never leave any heavy or sharp-edged objects in the pockets of the items of clothing. Additionally, clothes hangers must not be used to hang up items of clothing.
- The installation of impermissible accessories in the vicinity of the head airbags can considerably impair the protection offered by the head airbag in the event of it being deployed. When the deployed head airbag is inflated, parts of the accessories fitted could, conditions permitting, be thrown into the interior of the car and injure the occupants » page 149.

WARNING (Continued)

- When objects are attached to the sun visor, the visor can not be pivoted to the side windows. This might result in injuries to the occupants if the head airbag is deployed.
- There must not be any further persons, animals or objects positioned between the occupants and the deployment area of the airbag. In addition, none of the occupants should lean their head out of the window when driving, or extend their arms and hands out of the window.

Note

In vehicles with head airbags, the lettering AIRBAG can be seen on the B column cladding.

Deactivating airbags

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Deactivating airbags

If you sell your vehicle, provide the complete vehicle documentation to the new owner. Please note that the information relating to the possibility of deactivating the front passenger airbag must be included!

If an airbag in the vehicle is to be turned off, then the buyer is to draw attention to this fact!

Deactivating an airbag should be considered in cases such as the ones below.

- If a child seat must be used on the front passenger seat, where the child is transported facing rearward » page 21, *Transporting children safely*.
- If it is not possible to maintain a distance of at least 25 cm between the middle of the steering wheel and chest, despite the driver's seat being correctly adjusted.
- If special attachments are required in the area of the steering wheel because of a physical disability.
- If different seats have been fitted (e.g. orthopaedic seats without side airbags).

The front passenger airbag can be switched off with the key-operated switch » Fig. 14 *on page 20* - A.

We recommend that you ask a ŠKODA service partner to deactivate any other airbags.

Deactivation indicator
Display of the airbag deactivation » page 37, *Airbag system*.

Note
A ŠKODA service partner will be able to inform you which, if any, of your vehicle's airbags can or must be deactivated.

Deactivating the front passenger airbag

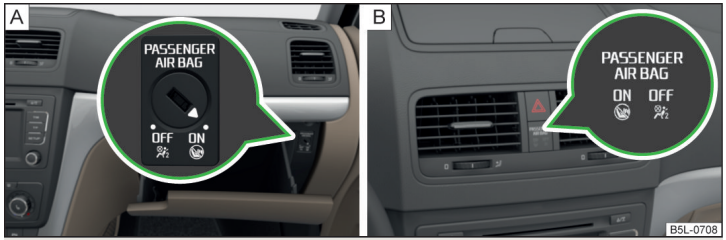

Fig. 14 **Key-operated switch for the front passenger airbag / warning light for front passenger airbag**

Only the front passenger airbag is deactivated with the key switch.

Key switch positions » Fig. 14 - A

OFF Passenger front airbag deactivated
ON Passenger front airbag activated

Switch off
› Switch off the ignition.
› Open the storage box on the front passenger's side.
› Fold the key bit out **completely** for the radio key » !.
› Carefully insert the key into the key slot in the key switch as far as the stop.
› Use the key to turn the slot of the key switch » Fig. 14 - A carefully into the position **OFF**.
› Pull the key out of the slot in the key switch » !.
› Close the storage box on the front passenger's side.
› Check that the warning light **OFF** under the text **PASSENGER AIR BAG** » Fig. 14 - B lights up after the ignition is switched on.

Switching on
› Switch off the ignition.
› Open the storage box on the front passenger's side.
› Fold the key bit out **completely** for the radio key » !.
› Carefully insert the key into the key slot in the key switch as far as the stop.
› Use the key to turn the slot of the key switch » Fig. 14 - A carefully into the position **ON**.
› Pull the key out of the slot in the key switch » !.
› Close the storage box on the front passenger's side.
› Check that the warning light **ON** under the text **PASSENGER AIR BAG** » Fig. 14 - B lights up after the ignition is switched on.

The **ON** warning light goes out 65 seconds after the key switch status has changed or after the ignition is switched on.

WARNING
- The driver is responsible for whether the airbag is switched on or switched off.
- Only switch off the airbag when the ignition is switched off! Otherwise a fault can occur in the system for deactivating the airbag.
- If the **ON** **OFF** warning lights flash, the front passenger airbag will not be deployed in the event of an accident! Have the airbag system checked by a specialist garage immediately.
- Do not leave the key inserted in the key-operated switch while driving - vibrations can cause the key to turn in the slot and switch on the airbag! The airbag can be triggered unexpectedly in an accident - it may result in injury or death!

CAUTION
An insufficiently folded out key bit can damage the key switch!

Transporting children safely

Child seat

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

To avoid serious injury or death children are always to be in an appropriate child safety seat with regards to height, weight, and age.

For safety reasons, we recommend that you always transport child seats on the rear seats.

Child seats complying with the ECE-R 44 Economic Commission for Europe standard must be used.

Child seats that comply with the ECE-R 44 standard are identified with a test mark that cannot be removed: a large E within a circle with the test number below.

With child safety seats in groups 2 and 3, make sure that the loop-around fittings attached to the child seat headrest is positioned in front of or at the same height as the loop-around fittings on the B pillar on the passenger side.

WARNING

- One should never carry children, and also not babies! - on one's lap.
- Never leave children unattended in the vehicle. Certain outside climatic conditions can cause life-threatening temperatures in the vehicle.
- The child must be secured in the vehicle during the entire journey! Otherwise, the child would be thrown through the vehicle in the event of an accident, causing fatal injuries to both the child and other occupants.

WARNING (Continued)

- Children are exposed to an increased risk of injury in the event of an accident if they lean forward or adopt an incorrect seated position when the vehicle is moving. This particularly applies to children who are transported on the front passenger seat as they can suffer severe, or even fatal injuries if the airbag system is deployed!
- Pay particular attention to the information provided by the manufacturer of the child safety seat regarding the correct routing of the belt. Seat belts which are not correctly adjusted can themselves cause injuries even in minor accidents.
- Safety belts must be checked to ensure that they are running properly. One should also ensure that the belt is not damaged by sharp-edged fittings.
- The front passenger airbag must be deactivated if using a rear-facing child seat on the front passenger seat. Further information » page 22, *Use of a child seat on the front passenger seat*.
- When installing the child seat on the back seat, the corresponding front seat must be adjusted so that there is no contact between the front seat and the child seat or the child being transported in a child seat.

CAUTION

- When installing a child seat in which the child faces forward, adjust the head restraints so that they are as high as possible.
- If the head restraints still prevent the child seat from being installed, even in the highest position, you will need to remove them » page 80. After removing the child seat, refit the head restraints.

Note

We recommend that you use child seats from ŠKODA Original Accessories. These child seats were developed and also tested for use in ŠKODA vehicles. They meet the ECE-R 44 standard.

Use of a child seat on the front passenger seat

Does not apply to Taiwan

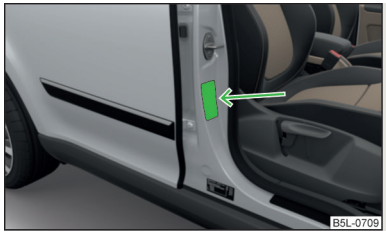

Fig. 15
Sticker on the B column on the front passenger side.

Fig. 16 **Front passenger sun visor / label**

Read and observe and on page 21 first.

Never use a rearward-facing child restraint system on a seat which is protected by an active airbag. This could cause serious injury to the child, even death.

The following instructions must be followed when using a child seat on the front passenger seat.

- The front passenger airbag must be deactivated if using a rear-facing child seat » .
- If possible, adjust the front passenger seat backrest so that it is as vertical, so as to ensure secure contact between the passenger seat backrest and the back of the child seat.
- If possible, move the front passenger seat backwards so that there is no contact between the front passenger seat and the child seat behind it.
- Set the height-adjustable front passenger seat as high up as possible.
- Set the front passenger seat belt as high up as possible.
- When using a child seat where there is a height adjuster in the upper area, the height of the passenger seat belt is to be set so that the belt is not "kinked" in the height adjuster. In the event of an accident, there is the risk of injury to the neck of the child carried due to the seat belt!

WARNING

- **Never** use a rear-facing child seat on the front passenger seat if the passenger airbag is activated. This child safety seat is positioned in the deployment area of the front passenger airbag. The airbag may cause the child severe, or even fatal injuries, in the event of it being deployed.
- This fact is also indicated by the label that can be found in one of the following locations.
  - On the B-column on the front passenger side » Fig. 15. The sticker is visible upon opening the front passenger door.
  - On the front passenger's sun visor. In some countries, the sticker is located on the front seat passenger's sun visor » Fig. 16.
- As soon as the rear-facing child seat is no longer being used on the passenger seat, the front passenger airbag should be re-activated again.

Use of the child seat in the front passenger seat

Applies to Taiwan

Fig. 17 **Front passenger sun visor / label**

Read and observe and on page 21 first.

No babies, infants or children to be carried on the passenger seat.

Also indicated by the label on the passenger's sun visor » Fig. 17.

Child safety and side airbag

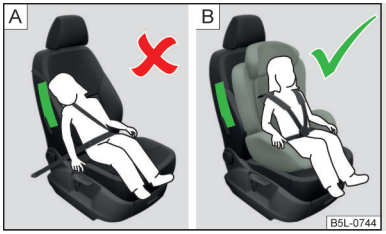

Fig. 18
Incorrect seated position of a child who is not properly secured – risk from the side airbag/Child properly protected by safety seat

Read and observe ! and ! on page 21 first.

The child must not be positioned in the deployment area of the side airbag » Fig. 18 - A.

There must be sufficient room between the child and the deployment area of the side airbag that the airbag can provide as much protection as possible » Fig. 18 – B.

Classification of child seats

Read and observe ! and ! on page 21 first.

Classification of child seats according to the ECE-R 44 standard.

Group	Weight of the child
0	up to 10 kg
0+	up to 13 kg
1	9-18 kg
2	15-25 kg
3	22-36 kg

Use of child seats fastened with a seat belt

Read and observe ! and ! on page 21 first.

Overview of the usability of child seats fastened with a seat belt on each of the seats in accordance with the ECE-R 16 standard.

Group	Front passenger seat	Rear seats External	Rear seat Centre
0 up to 10 kg	U	U	U
0+ up to 13 kg	U	U	U
1 9-18 kg	U	U	U
2 15-25 kg	U	U	U[a)]
3 22-36 kg	U	U	U[a)]

a) If the middle rear seat is not provided with a headrest, then a child seat of Group 2 or 3 is only to be used if this has its own built-in headrest. If the child seat of Group 2 or 3 does not have its own built-in headrest, the child seat must be attached to the outer rear seat.

U "Universal" child seat category - a child seat designed to be attached to the seat using the seat belt.

Fastening systems

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

attachment points of the ISOFIX system

Fig. 19
Labels of the system ISOFIX

ISOFIX is a system for securing child seats quickly and safely.

There are two fixing eyes between the seat backrest and the seat cushion of the front passenger seat for fixing a child seat with the ISOFIXsystem.

On the rear outside seats, the fixing eyes are located below the upholstery. The places are marked with labels with the ISOFIX logo » Fig. 19.

WARNING

- Always refer to the instructions of the manufacturer of the child seat when installing and removing a child seat with the ISOFIX system.
- Never attach other child seats, belts or objects to the attachment points intended for the installation of a child seat with the ISOFIX system – risk of death!

Note

- A child seat fitted with the ISOFIX system can only be mounted in a vehicle fitted with a ISOFIX system if the child seat has been approved for this type of vehicle. Further information is available from a ŠKODA Partner.
- Child seats with the ISOFIX system can be purchased from ŠKODA Original Accessories.

Use of child seats with the ISOFIX system

Overview of the use-ability of the child seats fastened with the ISOFIX system on each of the seats in accordance with the ECE-R 16 standard.

Group	Size class of the child seat[a]	Front passenger seat[b]	Outer rear seats	Rear seat middle
0 up to 10 kg	E	X	IL-SU	X
0+ up to 13 kg	E	X	IL-SU	X
	D			
	C			
1 9-18 kg	D	X	IL-SU IUF	X
	C			
	B			
	B1			
	A			
2 15-25 kg	-	X	IL-SU	X
3 22-36 kg	-	X	IL-SU	X

[a] The size category is shown on the label attached to the child seat.

[b] If the front passenger seat is fitted with ISOFIXsystem attachment points, it is suitable for the installation of an ISOFIX child seat with "Semi-Universal" approval.

IL-SU	The seat is suitable for the installation of a **ISOFIX** child seat with "Semi-Universal" approval. The "Semi-Universal" category means that the child seat with the **ISOFIX** system is approved for your vehicle. Observe the list of vehicles that comes with the child seat.
IUF	The seat is suitable for the installation of a **ISOFIX** child seat with the "Universal" approval and attachment with the **TOP TETHER** system belt.
X	The seat is not fitted with **ISOFIX** system attachment points.

Attachment points of the TOP TETHER system

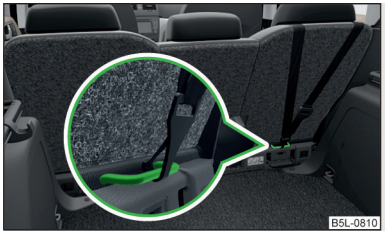

Fig. 20
The attachment point of the TOP TETHER system

TOP TETHER is a fastening system, which restricts the movement of the upper part of the child seat.

The attachment points for attaching the belt for a child seat with the **TOP TETHER** system are located on the back of the outer rear seat backrests » Fig. 20.

! WARNING

- Always refer to the instructions from the manufacturer of the child seat when installing and removing a child seat with the **TOP TETHER** system.
- Only use child seats with the **TOP TETHER** system on the seats with the attachment points.
- Only ever attach one belt from the child seat to a locking eye.

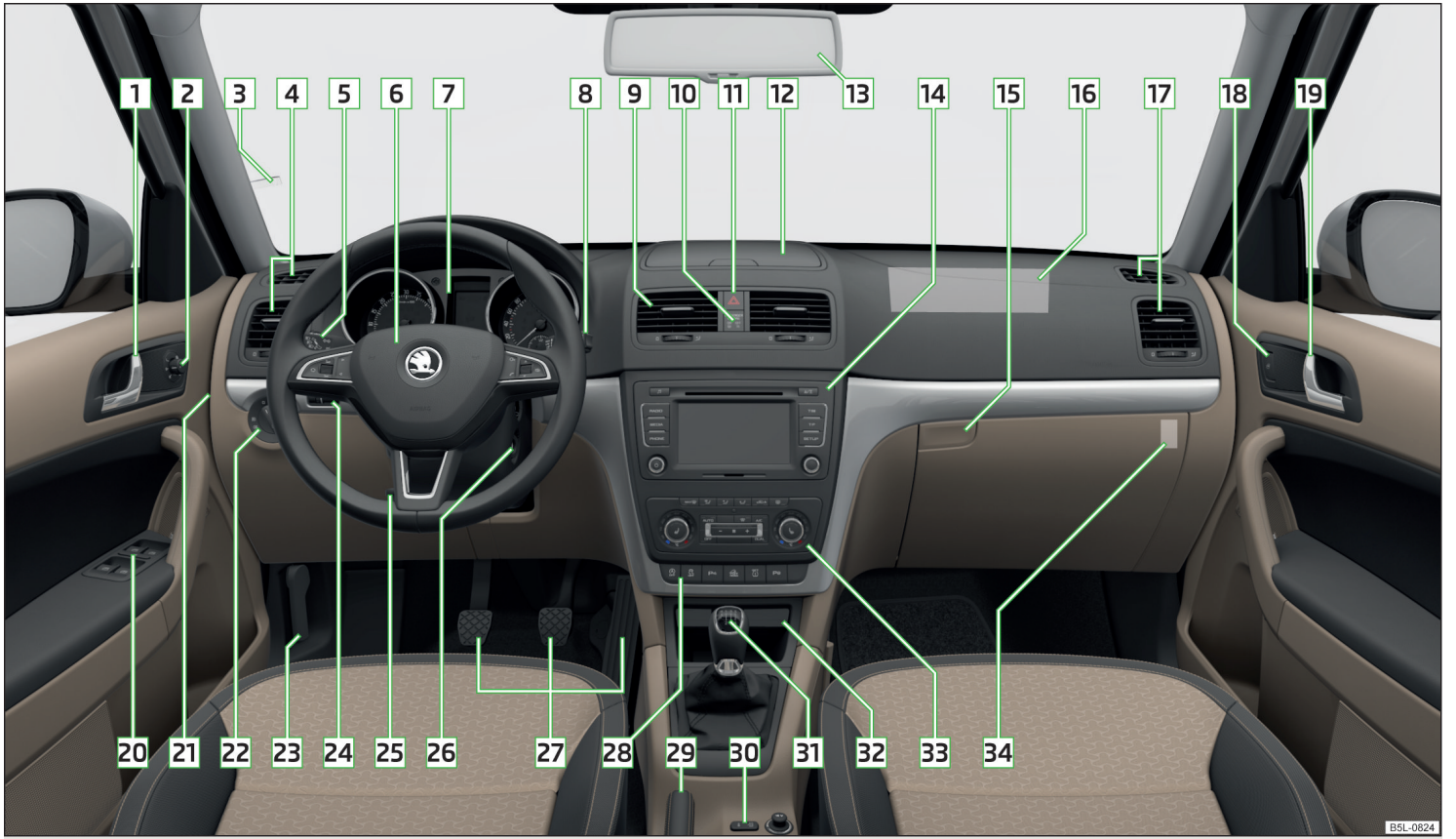

Fig. 21 **Cockpit**

Using the system

Cockpit

Overview

Note

The arrangement of the controls right-hand drive models may differ from the layout shown in » Fig. 21. The symbols on the controls and switches are the same as for left-hand drive models.

Instruments and Indicator Lights

Instrument cluster

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

The instrument cluster gives the driver basic information such as the current speed, engine speed, the state of some vehicle systems and the like.

If there is a fault in the instrument cluster, the **Error** message will appear in the display.

Seek help from a specialist garage.

! WARNING

Concentrate fully at all times on your driving! As the driver, you are fully responsible for road safety.

Overview

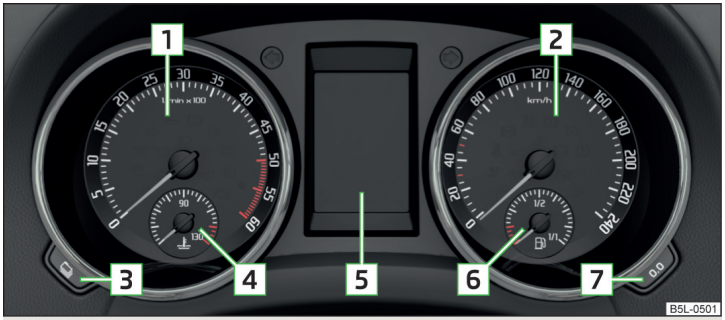

Fig. 22 **Instrument cluster**

Read and observe ! on page 28 first.

1 Engine revolutions counter » page 29
- with warning lights » page 32

2 Speedometer
- with warning lights » page 32

3 Button for display mode:
- Time settings » page 30
- Switching the display for the second speedometer on/off[1] » page 31
- Service intervals - Display of the number of days and kilometres remaining until the next service[1] » page 48

4 Coolant temperature gauge » page 29

5 Display » page 29

6 Fuel gauge » page 30

7 Button for:
- Reset counter for distance travelled (trip) » page 30
- Setting the time
- Enable / disable the mode selected by means of the 3 key

[1] Applies to vehicles with a segment display.

Revolutions counter

Read and observe ! on page 28 first.

The tachometer 1 » Fig. 22 *on page 28* shows the actual engine speed per minute.

The beginning of the tachometer red scale range indicates the maximum permitted speed for an engine that has been driven-in and has reached operating temperature.

You should shift into the next highest gear before the red scale of the revolution counter is reached, or select mode **D** on the automatic gearbox.

The gear recommendation is important to note in order to maintain the optimum engine speed » page 40.

! CAUTION

The pointer of the tachometer must reach the red area for only a short time - there is a risk of engine damage!

Coolant temperature gauge

Fig. 23
Coolant temperature gauge

Read and observe ! on page 28 first.

The display » Fig. 23 provides information on the engine coolant temperature.

The display only works if the ignition is switched on.

Cold range

If the pointer is still in the left area of the scale, this indicates that the engine has not yet reached its operating temperature. Avoid high speeds, full throttle and high engine loads. This prevents possible damage to the engine.

The operating range

The engine has reached its operating temperature as soon as the pointer moves into the middle of the scale A » Fig. 23.

High temperature range

If the pointer reaches the red area of the scale, the coolant temperature is too high.

! CAUTION

- Additional headlights and other attached components in front of the air inlet impair the cooling efficiency of the coolant.
- Never cover the radiator - there is a risk of the engine overheating.

Display

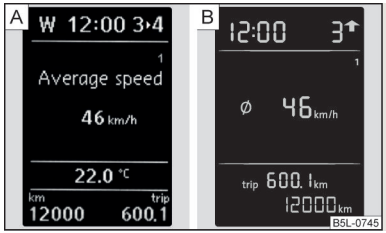

Fig. 24
Display types

Read and observe ! on page 28 first.

Display types » Fig. 24

A MAXI DOT display

B Segment display

The following information will be displayed.

- Distance travelled » page 30
- Time » page 30
- Information system data » page 39
- Warning lights » page 31, *Auto Check Control*

! CAUTION

Pull out the ignition key if coming in contact with the display (e.g. when cleaning) to prevent any possible damage. On vehicles with the KESSY system, switch off the ignition and open the driver's door.

Fuel gauge

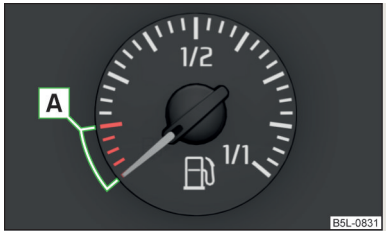

Fig. 25
Fuel gauge

Read and observe ! on page 28 first.

The display » Fig. 25 provides information on the fuel supply in the container.

The display only works if the ignition is switched on.

The fuel tank has a capacity of about 55 litres or 60 litres [1].

When the fuel level reaches the reserve area A » Fig. 25, the warning light » page 37 illuminates.

! WARNING

For the vehicle systems to function correctly, and thus for safe driving, there must be sufficient fuel in the tank. Never drain the fuel tank completely – risk of accident!

! CAUTION

Never drive until the fuel tank is completely empty! The irregular supply of fuel can cause misfiring. This can result in considerable damage to parts of the engine and the exhaust system.

i Note

After filling up, it can occur that during dynamic driving (e.g. numerous curves, braking, driving downhill and climbing a steep hill) the fuel gauge indicates approx. a fraction less. When stopping or during less dynamic driving, the fuel gauge displays the correct fuel level again. This is not a fault.

Counter for distance driven

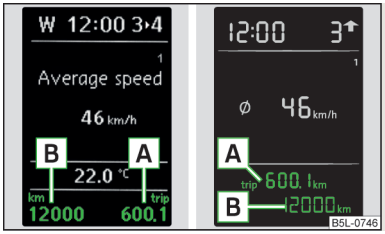

Fig. 26
Display: MAXI DOT display / Segment Display

Read and observe ! on page 28 first.

Display » Fig. 26

A Counter for the distance travelled since the last reset (trip)
B Odometer

Reset counter for distance travelled (trip)

› Press and hold the 7 » Fig. 22 *on page 28* button.

i Note

If the second speedometer display is enabled on vehicles with a segment display, this speed will be shown instead of the odometer during the journey.

Setting the time

Read and observe ! on page 28 first.

Use buttons 3 and 7 to set the clock » Fig. 22 *on page 28*.

3 The choice to change the display (hours or minutes).
7 The change of the displayed value.

In vehicles equipped with the MAXI DOT display, it is also possible to set the **Time** in the Time menu » page 47, *Menu item* **Settings**.

[1] Valid for Yeti 4x4.

Display of the second speedometer

Read and observe ! on page 28 first.

The display can show the current speed in mph[1].

This feature is provided for driving in countries with different speed units.

MAXI DOT display
The display of the second speedometer can be set in the **Alt. speed dis.** menu item » page 47, *Menu item* **Settings**.

Segment display
› Press key 3 » Fig. 22 *on page 28* repeatedly, until the odometer display flashes » page 30.
› Press the 7 key while the display flashes.

The second speedometer is displayed instead of the odometer.

The display of the second speedometer is switched off in the same manner as it is switched on.

Auto Check Control

Read and observe ! on page 28 first.

Vehicle condition
Certain functions of vehicle systems are checked continuously when the ignition is switched on.

Some error messages and other information are displayed in the MAXI DOT display. The messages are displayed simultaneously with the warning lights in the MAXI DOT display or with the warning lights in the instrument cluster » page 32, *Warning lights*.

The menu item **Vehicle status** is shown in the main menu of the MAXI DOT display whenever at least one fault message exists. After selecting this menu, the first of the error messages is displayed.

Several error messages are shown on the display under the message e.g. **1/3**. This indicates that the first of a total of three error messages is being displayed.

Warning lights in the MAXI DOT display

	Engine oil pressure too low	» page 34
	Check engine oil level Engine oil sensor defective	» page 169
	Engine-speed limitation	» page 31
	Water in fuel filter (diesel engine).	» page 31
	Automatic gearbox DSG overheated	» page 31
	AdBlue® level too low	» page 31

Engine-speed limitation
The information about the maximum permissible engine speed is displayed together with this warning light.

Do not exceed the indicated maximum engine speed!

Have the vehicle checked by a specialist garage.

Water in the fuel filter (diesel engine)
The fuel filter with water separator, filters out dirt and water from the fuel.

If too much water is present in the separator, the following information appears on the instrument cluster display.

M Water in fuel filter. Owner´s manual!
S FUEL FILTER SEE MANUAL

Seek help from a specialist garage.

Automatic gearbox DSG overheated
M Gearbox overheated. Stop! Owner´s manual!

▸ **Do not continue to drive!** Stop the vehicle and turn off the engine.

You can continue your journey as soon as the warning light disappears.

AdBlue® level too low
The warning light is only shown in the MAXI DOTdisplay.

[1] For models with the speedometer in mph, the second speedometer is displayed in km/h.

M **AdBlue (DEF) refill! Range: ...**
S **ADBLUE RANGE ...**

The range in the display indicates the distance that can be driven with the remaining AdBlue® left in the tank.

Refill AdBlue® » page 164.

M **AdBlue (DEF) refill! No engine start in ...**
S **ADBLUE NO START IN ...**

The range in the display indicates the distance to travel, after which no engine restart is possible, as long as no AdBlue® is added.

Refill AdBlue® » page 164.

M **AdBlue (DEF) refill! No engine start possible.**
S **ADBLUE NO RESTART**

It is no longer possible to start the engine.

Refill AdBlue® » page 164.

WARNING

If you have to stop for technical reasons, then park the vehicle at a safe distance from the traffic, switch off the engine and switch on the hazard warning light system » page 68. Place the warning triangle at the prescribed distance.

Note

- If the MAXI DOT display shows warning messages, these messages must be confirmed in order to access the main menu » page 41, *Operation* .
- As long as the operational faults are not rectified, the warning lights are always indicated again. After they are displayed for the first time, the warning lights continue to be indicated without any extra messages for the driver.

Warning lights

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

The warning lights indicate certain functions or faults.

Some warning lights can be accompanied by acoustic signals and messages in the display of the instrument cluster.

After switching on the ignition, some warning lights **light up** briefly as a function test.

If the tested systems are OK, the corresponding warning lights go **out** a few seconds after switching on the ignition or after starting the engine.

WARNING

- Ignoring illuminated warning lights and related messages or instructions in the display of the instrument cluster may lead to serious personal injury or damage to the vehicle.
- If you have to stop for technical reasons, then park the vehicle at a safe distance from the traffic, switch off the engine and switch on the hazard warning light system » page 68. Place the warning triangle at the prescribed distance.
- The engine compartment of your car is a hazardous area. The following warning instructions must be followed at all times when working in the engine compartment » page 165, *Engine compartment*.

Handbrake

Read and observe ! on page 33 first.

(P) illuminates – the hand brake is applied.

An acoustic signal will sound if you drive the vehicle above 6 km/h for at least 3 seconds while the handbrake is applied.

Release parking brake!

Brake system

Read and observe ! on page 33 first.

illuminates – the brake fluid level in the braking system is too low.

Brake fluid: Owner's Manual!

› Stop the vehicle, switch off the engine, and check the level of the brake fluid » page 171.

WARNING

- If the warning light lights up together with the warning light » page 36, *Antilock brake system (ABS)*, **stop driving!** Seek help from a specialist garage.
- A fault to the ABS system or the braking system can increase the vehicle's braking distance – risk of accident!

Seat belt warning light

Read and observe ! on page 33 first.

illuminates - the driver or front passenger has not fastened their seat belt.

The indicator light goes off after the respective seat belt is fastened.

At a speed of more than approximately 20 km/h the warning light flashes and an audible warning sounds at a time.

If the seat belt is not fastened by the driver or front passenger during the next approx. 2 seconds, the warning signal is deactivated and the warning light lights up permanently.

Alternator

Read and observe ! on page 33 first.

illuminates – the battery is not being charged whilst the engine is running.

Seek help from a specialist garage.

CAUTION

If in addition to the symbol the symbol » page 33lights up while driving, **stop driving**- risk of engine damage! Switch off the engine and seek assistance from a specialist garage.

Door open

Read and observe ! on page 33 first.

illuminates - one or more doors are open.

On vehicles with MAXI DOT display, this indicator is replaced by a vehicle icon on the display » page 40 .

Coolant

Read and observe ! on page 33 first.

illuminates or flashes – the coolant temperature is too high or the coolant level is too low.

Check coolant! Owner´s manual!

› Stop the vehicle, switch off the engine, check the level of the coolant, and refill the coolant if necessary.

If the coolant level is within the specified range and the warning light illuminated again after ignition on, then there may be a malfunction of the cooling fan.

› Switch off the ignition.
› Check the fuse for the radiator fan, replace if necessary.

If the coolant level and the fan fuse are OK and the warning light illuminates again after ignition on **do not continue to drive!**

Seek help from a specialist garage.

WARNING

- Carefully open the coolant expansion bottle. If the engine is hot, the cooling system is pressurized - risk of scalding! It is therefore best to allow the engine to cool down before removing the cap.
- Do not touch the radiator fan. The radiator fan may switch itself on automatically even if the ignition is off - risk of injury!

Boot lid

Read and observe on page 33 first.

illuminates - the boot lid is open.

On vehicles with MAXI DOT display, this indicator is replaced by a vehicle icon on the display » page 40 .

Power steering/steering lock (KESSY system)

Read and observe on page 33 first.

Fault in the power steering
illuminates – this indicates a complete failure of the power steering and the steering assist has failed (significantly higher steering forces).

illuminates – this indicates a partial failure of the power steering and the steering forces can be greater.

Seek help from a specialist garage.

Steering column lock not unlocked (System KESSY)
flashes - for vehicles with the KESSY system, the steering lock is not released.

▸ Move the steering wheel slightly back and forth, thereby facilitating unlocking the steering lock.

If the steering does also not unlock then, the help of a specialist garage is required.

Steering lock defect (KESSY system)
An audible signal sounds as a warning.

flashes **Steering column lock faulty.**

Park the vehicle, **stop driving**. After switching off the ignition, it is then no longer possible to lock the steering, to activate the electrical components (e.g. radio, navigation system), to switch on the ignition again and to start the engine. Seek help from a specialist garage.

flashes **Steering column lock: Workshop!**

Seek help from a specialist garage.

Disconnecting the vehicle battery
If the vehicle's battery has been disconnected and reconnected, the indicator light comes on after switching on the ignition.

The warning light should go out after driving a short distance.

If, after the motor is restarted and a short drive, the indicator light does not go out, there is a system error.

Seek help from a specialist garage.

Read and observe on page 33 first.

Low oil pressure
flashes **Oil pressure: Engine off! Owner´s manual!**

▸ Stop the vehicle, switch off the engine, and check the engine oil level.

If the warning light flashes , **do not drive an further!**even if the oil level is correct! Also do not leave the engine running at an idling speed.

Seek help from a specialist garage.

Engine oil level too low

Illuminates — Check oil level!

▸ Stop the vehicle, switch off the engine, and check the engine oil level, top up if necessary.

The warning light will go out if the bonnet is left open for more than 30 seconds. If no engine oil has been replenished, the warning light will come on again after driving about 100 km.

Fault on the engine oil level sensor

flashes — Oil sensor: workshop!

The warning light flashes several times after switching on the ignition and there is audible signal.

Seek help from a specialist garage.

CAUTION

Stop driving if for some reason it is not possible to top up the engine oil under the current conditions. Switch off the engine and seek assistance from a specialist garage.

Traction Control System (ASR)

Read and observe ! on page 33 first.

flashes - the TCS is now being activated.

illuminates - there is a TCS fault.

Error: traction control (ASR)

Seek help from a specialist garage.

If the warning light comes on after starting the engine, the TCS may be switched off for technical reasons.

› Switch the ignition off and on again.

If the warning light does not illuminates after you switch the engine back on, the ASR is fully functional again.

For more information about the TCS system » page 128, *Traction control (TCS)*.

Disconnecting the vehicle battery

If the vehicle's battery has been disconnected and reconnected, the indicator light comes on after switching on the ignition.

The warning light should go out after driving a short distance.

If, after a short drive, the indicator light does not go out, there is a system error.

Seek help from a specialist garage.

Electronic Stability Control (ESC)

Read and observe ! on page 33 first.

flashes - the ESC is now being activated.

illuminates - there is an ESC fault.

Error: stabilization control (ESC)

Seek help from a specialist garage.

If the warning light comes on after starting the engine, the ESC system may be switched off for technical reasons.

› Switch the ignition off and on again.

The ESC is fully functional again if the warning light does not light up after you switch the engine back on.

For more information about the ESC system » page 127, *Stability Control (ESC)*.

Disconnecting the vehicle battery

If the vehicle's battery has been disconnected and reconnected, the indicator light comes on after switching on the ignition.

The warning light should go out after driving a short distance.

If, after a short drive, the indicator light does not go out, there is a system error.

Seek help from a specialist garage.

Traction control (TCS) is deactivated

Read and observe ! on page 33 first.

illuminates – the TCS system is disabled.

Traction control (ASR) is deactivated.

Antilock brake system (ABS)

Read and observe ! on page 33 first.

illuminates – there is an ABS fault.

Error: ABS

The vehicle will only be braked by the normal brake system without the ABS.

Seek help from a specialist garage.

In the event of an ABS fault, the other braking and stabilization systems are turned off » page 127, *Braking and stabilisation systems* .

WARNING

- If the warning light lights up together with the warning light » page 33, **stop driving!** Seek help from a specialist garage.
- A fault to the ABS system or the braking system can increase the vehicle's braking distance – risk of accident!

Rear fog light

Read and observe ! on page 33 first.

illuminates – the rear fog light is switched on.

Lamp failure

Read and observe ! on page 33 first.

illuminates – one of the vehicle's exterior lights is defective. A message will appear concerning the affected lamp.

illuminates within a few seconds after switching on the ignition or when a light with a faulty bulb is switched on.

Example of a message in the MAXI DOT display.

INFORMATION Check front right low beam!

Xenon headlights (AFS)

Read and observe ! on page 33 first.

flashes for 1 minute while driving or after the ignition is switched on - there is a fault in the xenon headlight.

The following message is shown in the MAXI DOT display.

No cornering lighting (AFS) function. Owner´s manual!

Note

With the Xenon headlight "tourist light" (travel mode) activated, the warning light flashes after switching on the ignition for 10 seconds.

Exhaust inspection system

Read and observe ! on page 33 first.

illuminates – there is a fault in the emission control system. The system allows operation emergency mode - there may be a noticeable reduction in engine performance.

Seek help from a specialist garage.

Glow plug system (diesel engine)

Read and observe ! on page 33 first.

The warning light **lights up** after the ignition has been switched **on**. Once the light has gone out, the engine can be started immediately.

flashes – there is a fault in the engine management system. The system allows operation emergency mode - there may be a noticeable reduction in engine performance.

There is a fault in the glow plug system if the warning light does not come on or illuminates continuously.

Seek help from a specialist garage.

Engine performance check (petrol engine)

Read and observe ! on page 33 first.

EPC illuminates – there is a fault in the engine management system. The system allows operation emergency mode - there may be a noticeable reduction in engine performance.

Seek help from a specialist garage.

Diesel particulate filter (diesel engine)

Read and observe ! on page 33 first.

The diesel particulate filter separates the soot particles from the exhaust. The soot particles collect in the diesel particulate filter where they are burnt on a regular basis.

Illuminates – the filter is clogged with soot.

To clean the filter, and where traffic conditions permit » !, drive as follows for at least 15 minutes or until the indicator light goes out.

✓ 4th or 5th gear engaged (automatic gearbox: position S).
✓ Vehicle speed at least 70 km/h.
✓ Engine speed between 1800-2500 rpm.

If the filter is properly cleaned, the warning light extinguishes.

If the filter is not properly cleaned, the warning light does not go out and the warning light begins to flash.

Diesel Particulate Filter: Owner´s manual!

The system allows the vehicle to run in emergency mode. After switching the ignition off and on again the indicator light, the warning light also illuminates.

Seek help from a specialist garage.

WARNING

- Always adjust the speed and driving style to the actual weather, road, terrain and traffic conditions.
- The diesel particulate filter reaches very high temperatures - there is a fire hazard and serious injury could be caused. Therefore, never stop the vehicle at places where the underside of your vehicle can come into contact with flammable materials such as dry grass, undergrowth, leaves, spilled fuel or such like.

CAUTION

- As long as the warning light illuminates, one must take into account an increased fuel consumption and a power reduction of the engine.
- Using diesel fuel with an increased sulphur content can considerably reduce the life of the diesel particle filter. A ŠKODA partner will be able to tell you which countries use diesel fuel with a high sulphur content.

Note

- To assist the combustion process of the soot particles in the filter, we recommend that regularly driving short distances be avoided.
- If the engine is turned off during the filter cleaning process or shortly afterwards, the cooling fan may turn on automatically for a few minutes.

Fuel reserve

Read and observe ! on page 33 first.

illuminates – the fuel level in the fuel tank is at the reserve level (approximately 9 litres).

An audible signal sounds as a warning.

Please refuel. Range: ... km

Note

The text in the display goes out only after refuelling and driving a short distance.

Airbag system

Read and observe ! on page 33 first.

System fault

illuminates - there is a fault in the airbag system.

Error: airbag

Seek help from a specialist garage.

The front passenger airbag has been disabled with the key switch
illuminates for around 4 seconds after the ignition has been switched on.

OFF under the letters **PASSENGER AIR BAG** in the middle of the dash panel illuminates after switching on the ignition » page 20.

One of the airbags or a belt tensioner has been disabled by the diagnostic tool
illuminates for approximately 4 seconds after the ignition is switched on and then flashes for approximately 12 seconds.

Airbag / belt tensioner deactivated.

WARNING
When a fault in the airbag system occurs, there is a risk of the system not being triggered in the event of an accident. Therefore, this must be checked immediately by a specialized company.

Tyre pressure

Read and observe ! on page 33 first.

Change of tyre pressure values
illuminates – there was a pressure change in one of the tyres.

An audible signal sounds as a warning.

› Immediately reduce speed and avoid sudden steering and braking manoeuvres.
› Stop the vehicle, turn the ignition off and check the tyres and their inflation pressures » page 176.
› Correct the tyre pressure if necessary or replace the affected wheel » page 182 or use the repair kit » page 186.
› Save the tyre pressure values in the system » page 141.

System fault
flashes for approximately 1 minute and remains lit – there may be a fault in the tyre pressure monitoring system.

› Stop the vehicle, turn the ignition off and start the engine again.

If the warning light flashes again after the engine has started, there is a system error.

Seek help from a specialist garage.

Disconnecting the vehicle battery
If the vehicle's battery has been disconnected and reconnected, the indicator light comes on after switching on the ignition.

The warning light should go out after driving a short distance.

If, after a short drive, the indicator light does not go out, there is a system error.

Seek help from a specialist garage.

Other incidents
The following reasons can explain the warning light being illuminated.
▸ The vehicle is loaded on one side. Distribute loads as evenly as possible.
▸ The wheels of one axle are loaded more heavily (e.g. when towing a trailer or when driving uphill or downhill).
▸ Snow chains are mounted.
▸ A wheel has been changed.

CAUTION
Under certain circumstances (e.g. sporty style of driving, wintry or unpaved roads) the warning light can be delayed or does not light up at all.

Windscreen washer fluid level

Read and observe ! on page 33 first.

illuminates – the windscreen washer fluid level is too low.

Top up wash fluid!

› Fill up the windscreen washer fluid.

Turn signal system

Read and observe ! on page 33 first.

flashes – the left turn signal is turned on.

flashes – the right turn signal is turned on.

If there is a fault in the turn signal system, the warning light flashes at twice its normal rate. This does not apply when towing a trailer.

When the hazard warning light system is switched on, this will cause all of the turn signal lights as well as both warning lights to flash.

Fog lights

Read and observe ! on page 33 first.

illuminates – the fog lights are switched on.

Cruise control system

Read and observe ! on page 33 first.

illuminates – the vehicle speed is regulated by the cruise control.

Brake pedal (automatic gearbox)

Read and observe ! on page 33 first.

illuminates – apply the brake.

OFF ROADmode

Read and observe ! on page 33 first.

illuminates – the conditions for the engagement of OFF ROADmode are met.

flashes – the hill descent assistant is engaged at the moment.

For more information about OFF ROAD mode » page 129, *OFF ROAD-mode*.

Main beam

Read and observe ! on page 33 first.

illuminates – the main beam or the headlight flasher is switched on.

Information system

Driver information system

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Depending on the vehicle's equipment, the information system vie the display of the instrument cluster provides the following information.

- Data relating to the multi-function display (MFD) » page 41.
- Data relating to the Maxi DOT display » page 43.
- Service interval display » page 48.
- Auto Check Control » page 31.
- Selector lever positions for an automatic gearbox » page 122.

! WARNING

Concentrate fully at all times on your driving! As the driver, you are fully responsible for the operation of your vehicle.

Display a low temperature

Read and observe ! on page 39 first.

If the outside temperature drops below +4 °C while driving, the warning light ❄ (low temperature warning) illuminates and an audible signal sounds.

If the outside temperature is below +4 °C when the ignition is switched on, the following warning light appears in the display ❄.

! WARNING

Even at temperatures of around +4 °C, black ice may still be on the road surface! You should therefore not only rely on the outside temperature display for accurate information as to whether there is ice on the road.

Door, boot or engine compartment warning

Read and observe ! on page 39 first.

Vehicles with a MAXI DOT display
If at least one door, the boot or bonnet is open, the display indicates the relevant **open** door, boot or bonnet vehicle icon.

Vehicles with a segment display
If at least one door or the boot lid is open, the warning light in the instrument cluster lights up » page 33.

If the boot lid is open, the warning light in the instrument cluster lights up » page 34.

An acoustic signal will also sound if you drive the vehicle above 6 km/h when a door is open.

Overspeed warning at 120 km/h

Read and observe ! on page 39 first.

This function only applies to certain countries.

An audible warning signal will sound when the vehicle speed exceeds 120 km/h. The audible warning signal is switched off when the vehicle speed falls below 120 km/h.

Gear recommendation

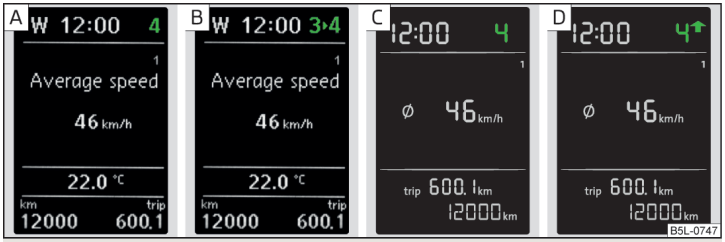

Fig. 27 **Information on the selected gear / Gear recommendation**

Read and observe ! on page 39 first.

A suitable gear is engaged, if necessary, a recommendation to shift to high or lower gear is displayed.

A suitably engaged gear helps to reduce the fuel consumption and assist the service life and reliability of the engine.

For vehicles with automatic transmission the recommended gear will be shown provided the mode for manual switching (Tiptronic) is selected.

Recommended gear
MAXI DOT display
A Optimal gear engaged
B Recommended gear

Segment display
C Optimal gear engaged
D Recommended gear

Gear recommendation - MAXI DOT display
Besides showing the engaged gear, the arrow icon ▶ and the recommended gear are displayed.

For instance, if 3 ▶ 4 appears in this display, this means it is recommended that you shift from 3rd into 4th gear.

Gear recommendation - segment display
The **recommended** [1] gear and the arrow icon is displayed.
▸ ↑ - Recommends that you change up to a **higher** gear
▸ ↓ - Recommends that you change down to a **lower** gear

If the display shows for example 4 ↑ in vehicles with a **manual gearbox**, this means it is better to switch from a lower gear to the fourth gear.

If for example 4 ↑ is shown in the display in vehicles with an **automatic gearbox** which is in manual switching mode (Tiptronic), it is better to switch from the fourth gear to a higher gear.

! WARNING
The driver is always responsible for selecting the correct gear in different driving situations, such as overtaking.

Multifunction display (MFD)

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

The driving data is displayed on the multifunction display.

The multifunction display only operates if the ignition is switched on. After the ignition is switched on, the function that was last selected before switching off the ignition is displayed.

For vehicles with a MAXI DOT display, the menu item **MFD** must be selected and confirmed in the main menu » page 43, *MAXI DOT display*.

On vehicles with a MAXI DOT display, there is an option to fade out some of the information » page 47, *Menu item* **Settings**.

! WARNING
Concentrate fully at all times on your driving! As the driver, you are fully responsible for the operation of your vehicle.

i Note
If the display of the second speed is activated in mph, the current speed is not indicated in km/h on the display.

Operation

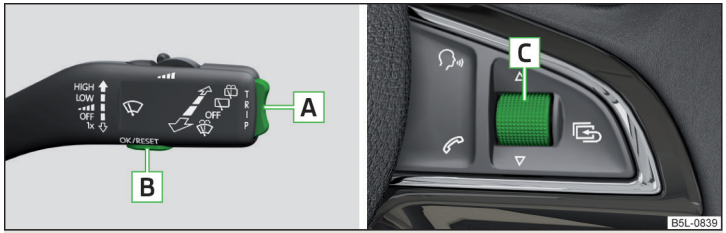

Fig. 28 **Buttons/dial: on the operating lever/the multifunction steering wheel**

Read and observe ! on page 41 first.

The selection as well as the settings of the data values can be operated with the buttons on the operating lever as well as on the multi-function steering wheel » Fig. 28.

Description of the operation

Button / dial	Action	Operation
A	Briefly press at the top or down	Select data / set data values
B	Press briefly	View information / confirm specification

[1] With vehicles that have an automatic gearbox and in the manual switching mode (Tiptronic) the **currently engaged gear is** shown.

Button / dial	Action	Operation
C	Turn upwards or downwards	Select data / set data values
	Press briefly	View information / confirm specification

Information overview

Read and observe ! on page 41 first.

Information overview of the multi-function display (depending on vehicle equipment)

Outside temperature
The current outside temperature is displayed.

For vehicles with a MAXI DOT display this information is always shown.

Driving time
The time travelled since the memory was last erased is displayed.

The maximum time indicated is 19 hours and 59 minutes (S) and 99 hours and 59 minutes (M). The indicator is automatically set back to zero if this period is exceeded.

Current fuel consumption
You can use this information to adapt your driving style to the desired fuel consumption.

When the vehicle is stationary or slowly moving the fuel consumption is displayed in l/h (on models for some countries the following appears --,- km/l).

Average fuel consumption
The indication is calculated continuously since the last deletion of the memory.

After erasing the memory, no data will appear for the first 300 m driven.

The indicated information is updated continuously while you are driving.

Range
The detail provides information about the distance in km, that can be travelled with the current tank and with the same driving style.

If you drive more efficiently this value can increase.

AdBlue® range
The detail provides information about the distance in km, that can be travelled with the AdBlue® capacity and with the same driving style.

The display appears as soon as the AdBlue® range drops below 2400 km.

Distance travelled
The distance travelled since the memory was last erased is displayed.

The maximum distance indicated is 1 999 km (S) and 9 999 km (M). The indicator is automatically set back to zero if this period is exceeded.

Average speed
The indication is calculated continuously since the last deletion of the memory.

After erasing the memory, no data will appear for the first 300 m driven.

Current driving speed
The display is identical to the display on the speedometer.

Oil temperature
If the engine oil temperature is in the range 80-110 °C, the engine operating temperature is reached.

If the oil temperature is lower than 80 °C or above 110 °C, avoid high engine revs, full throttle and high engine loads.

If the oil temperature is lower than 50 °C or if a there is fault in the system for checking the oil temperature, – –.– symbols are displayed instead of the oil temperature.

Warning against excessive speeds
Set the speed limit, for example, for the maximum permissible speed in town » page 42, *Warning when exceeding the set speed*.

Warning when exceeding the set speed

Read and observe ! on page 41 first.

The system allows you to set a speed limit and when this is reached, an acoustic warning signal sounds.

The menu item **Speed warning** (MAXI DOT display) or (Segment display) appears in the display at the same time as the set threshold.

Adjust the speed limit while the vehicle is stationary
› Select the menu item **Speed warning** at (M) or (S) and confirm.
› Set the desired speed limit.

› Confirm the set value, or wait several seconds; your settings will be saved automatically.

The speed limit can be adjusted from 30 km/h to 250 km/h in 5 km/h increments.

Adjusting the speed limit while the vehicle is moving
› Select the menu item **Speed warning** at (M) or (S) and confirm.
› Drive at the desired speed.
› Confirm the current speed as the speed limit.

The set speed limit can be manually adjusted later if needed.

Deactivate speed limit
› Select the menu item **Speed warning** at (M) or (S) and confirm.
› Confirm the stored value of the speed limits.

The speed limit will be disabled.

The set speed limit value remains stored even after switching off the ignition.

Memory

Fig. 29
Multi-function display - memory display

Read and observe ! on page 41 first.

The following data will be saved in two stores **1** and **2**.

- Average fuel consumption.
- Distance driven.
- Average speed.
- Driving time

Display of the selected memory in the display at position A » Fig. 29.

"1" - Single-trip memory
The memory collates the driving information from the moment the ignition is switched on until it is switched off.

New data will also flow into the calculation of the current driving information if the trip is continued **within 2 hours** after switching off the ignition.

If the trip is interrupted for **more than 2 hours**, the memory is automatically erased.

"2" - Long-term memory
The memory gathers data from any number of individual journeys up to a total of 19 hours and 59 minutes or 1 999 kilometres driven (S), and up to a total of 99 hours and 59 minutes or 9 999 kilometres driven (M).

The memory is deleted when either of these limits is reached and the calculation starts all over again.

Unlike the single-trip memory, the total-trip memory is not deleted after a period of interruption of driving of 2 hours.

Select memory
Operation » page 41.
▸ Select the driving data information desired.
▸ Confirm details again to select the desired memory.

Resetting
▸ Select the driving data information desired.
▸ Select the desired memory.
▸ Reset the selected memory by pressing and holding.

Note
Disconnecting the vehicle battery will delete all memory data.

MAXI DOT display

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

The MAXI DOT display provides you with information about the **current operating state of your vehicle.** In addition, it provides information, depending on vehicle equipment, about the radio, multi-function display (MFA), telephone and Infotainment. Furthermore, it allows the adjustment of some other features of your vehicle.

WARNING

Concentrate fully at all times on your driving! As the driver, you are fully responsible for the operation of your vehicle.

Main menu

Read and observe ! on page 44 first.

Call up the main menu

› Press and hold the button A on the operating lever » Fig. 30 *on page 44*.

or

› Press and hold the button H on the multi-function steering wheel » Fig. 31 *on page 45*.

Main menu items (depending on vehicle equipment)

- **MFD** (Multifunction display) » page 41
- **Audio** » page 46
- **Navigation** » page 45
- **Phone** » page 46;
- **Aux. heating** » page 109
- **Assistants** » page 46
- **Vehicle status** » page 31
- **Settings** » page 47

The **Audio** and **Navigation** menu items are only displayed when the factory Infotainment (or radio) is switched on.

The menus of the MAXI DOT display can be operated using the buttons on the control lever » page 44 or on the multi-function steering wheel » page 45.

Switching the function with "Checkbox" in the menu on/off

▸ ☑ - Function is switched on
▸ ☐ - Function is switched off

Note

- If warning messages are displayed, these messages must be verified to access the main menu.
- If the display is not activated at that moment, the menu always shifts to one of the higher levels after approx. 10 seconds.
- The operation of the factory-installed Infotainment (or radio) » *Owner´s Manual Infotainment* or » *Owner´s Manual Radio*.

Operation using the operating lever

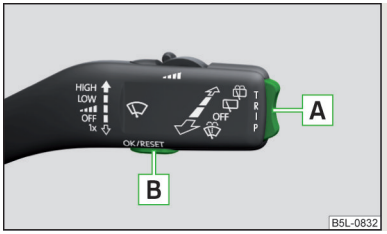

Fig. 30
Buttons: on the operating lever

Read and observe ! on page 44 first.

Description of the operation by means of the buttons on the operating lever

Button	Action	Operation
A	Briefly press at the top or down	Switch between menu items / menus
	Press at the top for a longer period or down	Display main menu
B	Press briefly	Confirm menu item / menu

Operation using the multifunction steering wheel

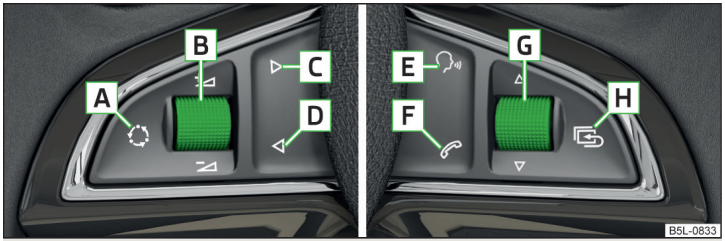

Fig. 31 **Buttons/dials: on the multifunction steering wheel**

Read and observe ! on page 44 first.

Description of the operation by means of the buttons/dials on the multifunction steering wheel

Button / dial	Action	Operation
A	Press briefly	Change frequency range (e.g. FM/AM/DAB) / Switch audio source (e.g. SD card/USB input)
	Press and hold button	Switch between the Radio and the Media menu in the Infotainment (the last selected station / track is set)
B	Press briefly	Switch sound on/off / Switch track playback on/off
	Turn up	Increase volume
	Turn down	Decrease volume
C	Press briefly	To the next radio channel or change to the playback track
	Press and hold button	Fast forward within the track
D	Press briefly	Switch to the previous radio channel or change to the playback track[a]
	Press and hold button	Fast reverse within the track
E	Press briefly	Voice control on/off / Sound off /on (applies to vehicles without voice control)
	Press and hold button	Activate the voice control of theSmartLink[b] function (if supported by the connected device)
F	Press briefly	Take the call / end the call / Menu **Phone** display / display call list / call the selected contact
	Press and hold button	Reject call / Redial last call
G	Press briefly	Menu item / menu confirmation / traffic report break
	Turn up	Previous menu item / track[a] / Show available list (e.g. list of available channels, call list)
	Turn down	Next menu item / track / Show available list (e.g. list of available channels, call list)
H	Press briefly	Return to a previous level in the menu
	Press and hold button	Return to Main Menu

[a] Valid for pressing within about 4 s from the beginning of the given track. Pressing after about 4 seconds from the beginning of the track, starts the playback from the beginning of the track.

[b] » *Infotainment Owner's Manual*

Note

Depending on equipment not all functions may be available. The system indicates this through a text message on the display.

Menu itemNavigation

Read and observe ! on page 44 first.

Select menu item Navigation

› Select and confirm **Navigation** in the main menu.

Route guidance takes place

Graphical driving recommendations and other route and destination information are displayed after selection.

No route guidance is carried out
A compass/vehicle symbol is shown to display the current vehicle position in relation to the compass after selection.

Menu itemAudio

Read and observe ! on page 44 first.

Select menu item Audio
› Select and confirm **Audio** in the main menu.

The information displayed in MAXI DOT display
- **Radio**
  - is the currently played station (name/frequency)
  - The selected frequency range (e.g. **FM**) optionally with the number of the station button (e.g. **FM3**), if the station is stored in the memory list
  - List of available station (if more than 5 stations can be received)
  - TP traffic announcements.
- **Media**
  - For information on the track

Menu itemPhone

Read and observe ! on page 44 first.

Select menu item Phone
› Select and confirm **Phone** in the main menu.
› Turn the dial G » Fig. 31 *on page 45*.

The system displays a call list.

If the call list includes no entries, the following message appears **No entries available.**

The following symbols are displayed next to each entry in the call list.
- Incoming call
- Outgoing call
- Missed call

Outgoing call
- **Hang up** - End a call

Incoming call
- **Answer** – Accept incoming call
- **Reject** – Reject incoming call

Ongoing call
- **Hang up** - End a call
- **Hold/Switch on** - Hold call/restore call
- **Private/Hands-free** - Switch call to the phone/switch call to the device
- **Mic. off / Mic. on** - Switch off the microphone / switch on the microphone

Incoming call during an ongoing call
- **Answer** – Accept incoming call and hold the ongoing call
- **Reject** - Rejects incoming call
- **Replace** – Replace the ongoing call with the incoming call

Ongoing and held call
- **Hang up** – End an ongoing call
- **Switch** – Switch from ongoing call to held call
- **Conference** – Connect ongoing and held call to the conference call
- **Mic. off / Mic. on** - Switch off the microphone / switch on the microphone

Conference call
- **Hang up** - End conference call
- **Hold** - Hold conference call
- **Mic. off / Mic. on** - Switch off the microphone / switch on the microphone

Symbols in the display
- Charge status of the telephone battery[1)]
- Signal strength[1)]
- A telephone is connected to the unit
- Missed calls (if there are several missed calls, the number of calls is shown next to the symbol)

Menu itemAssistants

Read and observe ! on page 44 first.

Select menu item Assistants
› Select and confirm **Assistants** in the main menu.

1) This function is only supported by some mobile phones.

In the **Assistants** menu item, the fatigue detection can be enabled/disabled » page 139.

Menu item Settings

Read and observe ! on page 44 first.

You can change certain settings by means of the display. The current menu item is shown in the top of the display under a line.

The following information can be selected (depending on the equipment installed in the vehicle).

Language
Setting the language for the texts shown on the display.

MFD data
Switching on/off certain information of the multifunction display.

Convenience
Turn on / off or adjust the following functions.

ATA confirm	Switch on/off the audible signal indicating activation of the anti-theft alarm system. Further information » page 56, *Anti-theft alarm system*.
Central locking	Switch on/off the central locking and automatic locking function. Further information » page 55, *Individual settings*.
Window op.	Only convenience mode for the driver window or for all of the windows can be adjusted here. Further information » page 61, *Window convenience operation*.
Mirror down	Activate/deactivate the function for mirror lowering on the front passenger side when in the reverse gear[a]. Further information » page 74, *Fold in passenger's mirror*.
Mirror adjust.	Activation / deactivation of the synchronous exterior mirror function settings. Further information » page 74, *Synchronous adjustment of the mirror*.
Factory setting	Restore the Convenience factory setting.

[a] This function is only available on vehicles with an electrically adjustable driver seat.

Lights & Vision
Turn on / off or adjust the following functions.

Coming Home	Activate/deactivate and adjust the light duration of the COMING HOME function. Further information » page 67, *COMING HOME / LEAVING HOME*.
Leaving Home	Switch on/off and adjust the light duration of the LEAVING HOME function. Further information » page 67, *COMING HOME / LEAVING HOME*.
Dayt. r. light	Activate/deactivate the daylight driving light. Further information » page 65, *Daylight running lights (DAY LIGHT)*.
Rear wiper	Activate/deactivate the function of the automatic rear window wiping. Further information » page 72, *Automatic rear window wiping*.
Lane ch. flash	Activate/deactivate the lane ch. flash function. Further information » page 66, *"Convenience turn signal"*.
Travel mode	Activate/deactivate the travel mode feature. Further information » page 67, *Tourist lights (Travel mode)*.
Factory setting	Restore the factory setting for the lighting.

Coasting
Enable / disable the idle position (coasting) for vehicles with automatic transmission » page 124, *Driving in Neutral (Coasting)*.

Time
Setting the time, the time format (24 or 12 hour) and the change of summer / winter time.

Winter tyres
Setting of the speed and the switching on and off of the acoustic signals when exceeding this speed. This function is, for example, used for winter tyres where the maximum permissible speed is lower than the maximum speed of the vehicle » page 176, *Tyres and wheel rims*.

As soon as the parking procedure is completed, an audible signal sounds and the following message appears in the information display.

Winter tyres: max. speed ... km/h.

Units
Setting of the units for temperature, consumption and distance travelled.

Assistants
Adjustment of the sound in the parking aid.

Further information » page 131, *Parking assistance (ParkPilot)*.

Alt. speed dis.
Turn on / off the display of the second speedometer in mph[1].

Further information » page 31, *Display of the second speedometer*.

Service
Display of the distance and the days until the next service appointment.

Further information » page 48, *Service interval display*.

Factory setting
Reset to factory settings of the display functions.

Compass point display

Read and observe ! on page 44 first.

Applies to vehicles with factory-installed navigation system.

In the display when the ignition is on an abbreviation for the corresponding direction (in relation to the current direction of travel) are displayed.

Service interval display

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

The service interval display shows the time and mileage to the next service event.

The service due date is automatically displayed on the display and this information can be displayed manually if necessary.

The information regarding the service intervals can be found in the service schedule.

[1] For models with the speedometer in mph, the second speedometer is displayed in km/h.

Prompt in the MAXI DOT display

Oil change service
If an oil change service is **due**, the following message appears **Oil service in ... km or ... days.**

As soon as the service interval date **has been reached**, the message **Oil service now!** appears once the ignition has been switched on!

Inspection
If an inspection is **due**, the following message appears: **Inspection in ... km or ... days.**

As soon as the service interval date **has been reached**, the message **Inspection now!** appears once the ignition has been switched on!

Displaying the distance and days until the next service interval
You can view the remaining distance and days until the next service appointment at any time when the ignition is switched on by going to the **Service** menu item » page 47, *Menu item* **Settings** or from the **Vehicle status** in the main menu of the Maxi DOTdisplay. » page 44, *Main menu* .

The following message is displayed for 10 seconds.

Oil service ... km / ... days

Inspection ... km / ... days

Prompt in the segment display

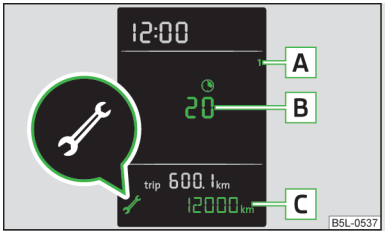

Fig. 32
Segment display: Example of a message

Explanation of graphic » Fig. 32

- Service due
- A Differentiating between types of service
- B Days remaining until the next service interval
- C Kilometres remaining until the next service interval[1)]

Differentiating between types of service

The service type is determined by the number in position A » Fig. 32.

1 Oil change service

2 Inspection

Service due

If a service becomes **due**, then the following information is displayed for about 10 seconds » Fig. 32.

- ▸ The number **1** or **2** is displayed in position A.
- ▸ The symbol and the number of days remaining until the next service interval are displayed in position B.
- ▸ The symbol and the number of kilometres remaining until the next service interval are displayed in position C.

As soon as the due date for the service **has been reached**, the flashing icon and the message **OIL** or **INSPEC_** appear in the display for about 20 seconds after the ignition has been switched on.

Display the days and distance until the next service interval

You can press button 3 » Fig. 22 *on page 28* repeatedly to display the remaining distance and time to until the next service whenever the ignition is switched on.

Information on the **oil change service** is displayed at first, followed by information on the **inspection** when button 3 is pressed again.

- ▸ The number **1** or **2** is displayed in position A.
- ▸ The symbol and the number of days remaining until the next service interval are displayed in position B.
- ▸ The symbol and the number of kilometres remaining until the next service interval are displayed in position C.

Resetting the service interval display

We recommend that the display reset is completed by a specialist garage.

We recommend that you do not reset the service interval display yourself. Incorrectly setting the service interval display could cause problems to the vehicle.

Variable service interval

For vehicles with variable service intervals, after resetting the oil change service display, the values of a new service interval are displayed, which are based on the previous operating conditions of the vehicle.

These values are then continuously matched according to the actual operating conditions of the vehicle.

SmartGate

Introduction

Fig. 33
ŠKODA websites

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

SmartGate is a system that transmits certain driving data (such as fuel consumption, speed or similar) via Wi-Fi and Wi-Fi Direct.

The ŠKODA compatible communications device (e.g. phone, tablet, notebook) offer the possibility to further transmit the received data.

[1)] The kilometres remaining until the next service interval are displayed instead of the odometer.

More information on available applications, a list of compatible communication devices and on SmartGate, can be found on the ŠKODA website » Fig. 33.

http://www.skoda-auto.com

WARNING

- The general binding country-specific regulations for operating communication devices in the vehicle must be observed.
- Never leave a communication device in the deployment area of an airbag, on a seat, on the dash panel or any another area, from which it can be thrown during a sudden braking manoeuvre, an accident or a collision - risk of injury!
- Never connect or disconnect a communication device while driving - risk of accident!

CAUTION

- To increase the access security to the transmitted vehicle data, once the ŠKODA application has been started, you are requested to change the password/PIN code if the default password/PIN code has not yet been changed » page 51, *Password/PIN code change*. It is not possible to start the ŠKODA application without changing it.
- ŠKODA accepts no responsibility for any problems caused by incompatibility or improper functioning of the communication devices.

Note

The ŠKODA applications, support communications devices with the Android operating system version 4.x.x and later and iOS 7.x.x and higher.

Connection to SmartGate using Wi-Fi

Read and observe ! and ! on page 50 first.

Connecting to an Android communication device

› Switch on the ignition.
› Switch on the Wi-Fi on the communication device to be connected.
› Start the SmartGate application using the communication device to be connected.
› Then follow the instructions in the manual, which are included in the SmartGate application.

With SmartGate, a maximum of four communication devices can be connected simultaneously using Wi-Fi, with as many launched ŠKODA applications as required.

Connecting to an iOS communication device

› Switch on the ignition.
› Switch on the Wi-Fi on the communication device to be connected.
› Allow the communication device to be connected to search for available Wi-Fi networks (see the Owner's Manual for the communication device to be connected).
› In the menu of the detected networks select "SmartGate_..."[1] or "DIRECT SmartGate_..."[1].
› Enter the password » page 51.

With SmartGate, a maximum of four communication devices can be connected simultaneously using Wi-Fi. In these communication devices, up to four ŠKODA applications can be started simultaneously.

Disconnection

The connection can be switched off in one of the following ways.

› Switch off the ignition for longer than 5 seconds (for vehicles with a starter button, switch off the engine and open the driver's door).
› End the connection in the SmartGate application.
› Switch off the Wi-Fi on the connected communication device.

Automatic connection

If the communication device once had a connection with SmartGate, then the connection is automatically restored under the following conditions.

✓ The ignition is switched on.
✓ The Wi-Fi on the communication device to be connected is switched on.
✓ The communication device to be connected stores the password required for the connection check.

Connection to SmartGate using Wi-Fi Direct

Read and observe ! and ! on page 50 first.

This type of connection is intended for communication devices running the Android operating system.

[1] The last 6 characters of the VIN vehicle identification number of your vehicle are displayed at position ....

Connection set-up

› Switch on the ignition.
› Start the SmartGate application using the communication device to be connected.
› Then follow the instructions in the manual, which are included in the SmartGate application.

With SmartGate, a maximum of two communication devices can be connected simultaneously using Wi-Fi Direct, with as many launched ŠKODA applications as required.

If you want to connect to SmartGate in another vehicle, you must first end the existing connection to the SmartGate application and then re-establish the connection.

Disconnection

The connection can be switched off in one of the following ways.

› Switch off the ignition for longer than 5 seconds (for vehicles with a starter button, switch off the engine and open the driver's door).
› End the connection in the SmartGate application.
› Switch off the Wi-Fi on the connected communication device.

Automatic connection

If the communication device once had a connection with SmartGate, then the connection is automatically restored after the ignition is started.

SmartGate web interface

Read and observe ! and ! on page 50 first.

SmartGate parameters can be set in the SmartGate web interface.

The following address must be entered via Wi-Fi in the web browser of the connected communication device.

HTTP://192.168.123.1

The setting changes are only effective after pressing the "Save" button and then the "Reboot" button.

Password/PIN code change

Read and observe ! and ! on page 50 first.

The password for the Wi-Fi connection preset by the factory is the complete vehicle identification number (upper case); the PIN code for the Wi-Fi Direct connection preset by the factory is the last 6 digits of the vehicle identification number.

After changing the password/PIN, the connection to SmartGate must be re-established on the communication device to be connected using the new password or new PIN code.

If the password/PIN code is still set to the preset factory password/PIN code, you are requested to change the password/PIN code after starting the ŠKODA application. Without changing the password/PIN code, you are unable to use the application.

Changing the password for the Wi-Fi connection

› Open the SmartGate web interface.
› In the menu item "WPA/WPA2 key:" Enter the new password (8 to 63 alphanumeric characters and special characters, small and capital letters).
› Confirm the password change by tapping on the "Save" interface.
› Restart SmartGate by tapping on the "Reboot"[1] interface.

Changing the PIN code for the Wi-Fi Direct connection

› Open the SmartGate web interface.
› In the menu item "Wi-Fi Direct PIN:" Enter the new PIN code (6 digits).
› Confirm the PIN code change by tapping on the "Save" interface.
› Restart SmartGate by tapping on the "Reboot"[1] interface.

Note

If you have forgotten your password for the connection to SmartGate, SmartGate must be reset to factory settings in a specialised workshop.

[1] If the "Reboot" interface is not displayed, you must manually restore the web browser display.

Unlocking and opening

Unlocking and locking

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Your car is equipped with a central locking system.

The central locking system allows you to lock and unlock **all** doors, the fuel filler flap and boot lid at the same time. The functions of the central locking system can be individually adjusted » page 55.

After unlocking, depending on vehicle equipment and setting the following is valid for the central locking.

- The turn signal lights flash twice as confirmation that the vehicle has been unlocked.
- An double audible signal sounds additionally on vehicles which are fitted with the anti-theft alarm system.
- The doors, the boot lid and the fuel filler flap are unlocked.
- The interior light comes on.
- The SafeLock system is switched off.
- The indicator light in the driver door stops flashing.
- The anti-theft alarm system is deactivated.

After locking, depending on vehicle equipment and setting the following is valid for the central locking.

- The turn signal lights flash once as confirmation that the vehicle has been locked.
- An audible signal sounds additionally on vehicles which are fitted with the anti-theft alarm system.
- The doors, the boot lid and the fuel filler flap are locked.
- The interior lamp goes out.
- The SafeLock system is switched on.
- The indicator light in the driver door begins flashing.
- The anti-theft alarm system is activated.

If the doors or the boot lid remain open after the vehicle has been locked, the turn signal lights do not flash until they have been closed.

Protection against unintended vehicle unlocking

If you unlock the vehicle and do not open a door or the boot lid within the next 30 seconds, the vehicle will lock again automatically and the SafeLock system or anti-theft alarm system will be switched on.

WARNING

- Never leave the key in the vehicle when you exit the vehicle. Unauthorized persons, such as children, for example, could lock the car, turn on the ignition or start the engine - there is a danger of injury and accidents!
- When leaving the vehicle, never leave people who are not completely independent, such as children, unattended in the vehicle. These individuals might not be able to exit the vehicle by themselves or to help themselves. Can be fatal at very high or very low temperatures!

CAUTION

- Each key contains electronic components; therefore it must be protected against moisture and severe shocks.
- Keep the groove of the keys absolutely clean. Impurities (textile fibres, dust, etc.) have a negative effect on the functionality of the locking cylinder and ignition lock.
- If the driver's door has been opened, the vehicle cannot be locked.

Unlock / lock using key and lock

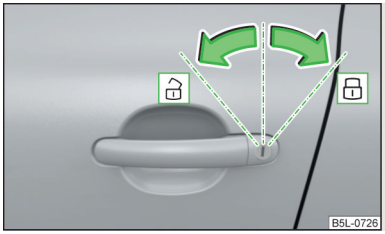

Fig. 34
Left side of the vehicle: Turning the key for unlocking and locking the vehicle

Read and observe ! and ! on page 52 first.

The key allows you to unlock and lock the vehicle via the lock cylinder in the driver's door.

Unlocking/locking the vehicle with the key » Fig. 34

- Unlocking the vehicle
- Locking the vehicle

Unlocking / locking with the remote control key

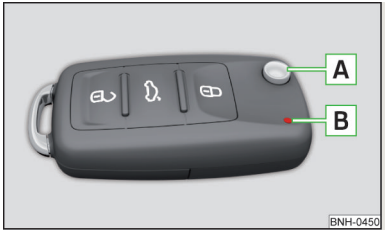

Fig. 35
Remote control key

Read and observe ! and ! on page 52 first.

Function and description of the key » Fig. 35

- Unlocking the vehicle
- Locking the vehicle
- Unlocking / locking the boot lid
- A Button for the extension / retraction of the key
- B Warning light for the battery charge status
  If the red warning light does not flash when you press a button on the key, the battery is discharged.

Unlocking / locking the boot lid
By **pressing briefly** the symbol button the boot lid unlocks.

Press and hold the symbol button to release the lid (partially opened).

If the boot lid is unlocked or released with the symbol button on the key, then the boot lid is automatically locked after closing. You can set a lock delay » page 58.

! CAUTION

- The operation of the remote control may temporarily be affected by signal interference from transmitters close to the car and which operate in the same frequency range.
- The operating range of the remote control key is approx. 30 m. But this range of the remote control can be reduced if the batteries are weak.
- The battery must be replaced if the central locking does react to the remote control at less than around 3 metres away » page 193.

i Note
The remote control will only operate when the vehicle is within sight.

Unlocking / locking - KESSY

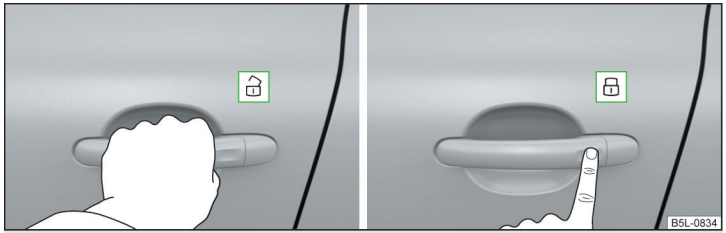

Fig. 36 **The front door handle**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 52 first.

The KESSY system (Key less Entry Start Exit System) enables unlocking and locking of the vehicle without actively using the remote control key » Fig. 36.

The sensors for unlocking or locking are located in the handle of the front door.

Unlocking
Locking

When unlocking or locking the vehicle, the key must be at a maximum distance of approximately 1.5 m from the front door handle.

Locking
On vehicles fitted with automatic gearbox, the selector lever must be moved into the position **P** before unlocking.

The vehicle cannot be locked from the outside if the ignition has not been turned off.

After locking the vehicle, it is not possible to unlock it within the next 2 seconds by touching the door handle. This can be used to check whether the vehicle is locked.

Protection against inadvertently locking the key in the vehicle
If one of the doors is closed after locking the vehicle and the key with which the vehicle was locked remains in the passenger compartment, the vehicle is automatically unlocked. After unlocking the vehicle again, the turn-signal lights flash four times. If no door is opened within 45 seconds, the vehicle is automatically locked again.

If the boot lid is closed after locking the vehicle and the key with which the vehicle was locked remains in the luggage compartment, the lid is unlocked (partially opened). The turn-signal lights flash four times as an indication that the boot lid has been unlocked again. The luggage compartment lid **remains released**(partially open).

The following message is shown in the information cluster display.

M **Key in vehicle.**
S **KEY IN VEHICLE**

CAUTION

- Some types of gloves can affect the unlocking or locking device in the door handle.
- After leaving the car there is no automatic locking.

Locking / unlocking the vehicle with the central locking button

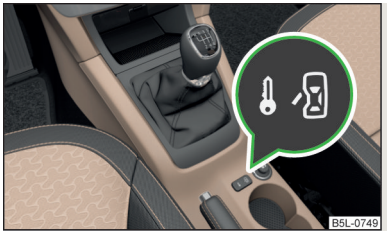

Fig. 37
Central locking button

Read and observe ! and ! on page 52 first.

When the vehicle has not been locked from the outside and no door is open the rocker button » Fig. 37can be used to unlock or lock the vehicle.

Unlocking/locking » Fig. 37
Locking
Unlocking

If the icon in the button is lit, the vehicle is locked.

If the icon in the button is not lit, the vehicle is not locked.

The central locking system also operates if the ignition is switched off.

The following applies after locking.
- Opening the doors and the boot lid from the outside is not possible.
- The doors can be unlocked and opened from the inside by a single pull on the opening lever of the respective door.

WARNING
Doors locked from the inside make it difficult for rescuers to get into the vehicle in an emergency – risk to life!

Safe securing system

Read and observe ! and ! on page 52 first.

As soon as the vehicle has been locked from the outside, the Safelock system prevents the doors from being opened from the inside.

This function is pointed out by the following message on the instrument cluster display after switching off the ignition.

Check SAFELOCK! Owner´s manual!

CHECK DEADLOCK

After locking the vehicle, the warning light in the driver's door flashes for around 2 seconds in quick succession, afterwards it begins to flash evenly at longer intervals.

Switching off

The safe lock can be switched off in one of the following ways.

- By locking twice within 2 seconds.
- By disabling the button for interior monitoring and anti-towing » page 57, *Interior monitor and towing protection*.

The indicator light in the driver door flashes for about 2 seconds fast, goes out and starts to flash at longer intervals after about 30 seconds.

If the vehicle is locked and the safe securing system is switched off, the door can be opened separately from the inside by a single pull on opening lever.

The Safelock system switches back on when the vehicle is locked.

WARNING

If the car is locked and the safe securing system activated, no people must remain in the car as it will then not be possible to either unlock a door or open a window from the inside. The locked doors make it more difficult for rescuers to get into the vehicle in an emergency – risk to life!

Individual settings

Read and observe and on page 52 first.

The following central locking functions can be individually set via the MAXI DOT display » page 47, *Menu item* **Settings**.

Opening a single door

The function allows you to unlock only the driver's door and the fuel filler flap with the radio remote control. KESSY makes it possible to release individual doors as well as the fuel filler flap, depending on the area in which the key is located. The other doors and the boot lid are only unlocked when the unlocking is repeated.

Unlocking a vehicle side door

This function enables you to unlock both doors on the driver's side and the fuel filler flap with the radio remote control unit. KESSY makes it possible to release of both doors on one side as well as the fuel filler flap, depending on the area in which the key is located. The other doors and the boot lid are only unlocked when the unlocking is repeated.

Unlock all doors

The function allows you to unlock all doors, the boot lid and the fuel filler flap.

Automatic locking/unlocking

The function allows you to lock all doors and the boot lid from a speed of about 15 km/h. The button in the handle of the boot lid is deactivated.

All doors and the boot lid are automatically unlocked again by removing the ignition key or by opening any of the doors. In vehicles with the KESSY system, this is when any door is opened.

The vehicle can also be unlocked by pressing the Central Locking Button in the centre console » page 54.

Acoustic signals when locking / unlocking

For vehicles with anti-theft alarm system, the acoustic signals can be activated / deactivated by means of the MAXI DOT display » page 47.

Opening/closing a door

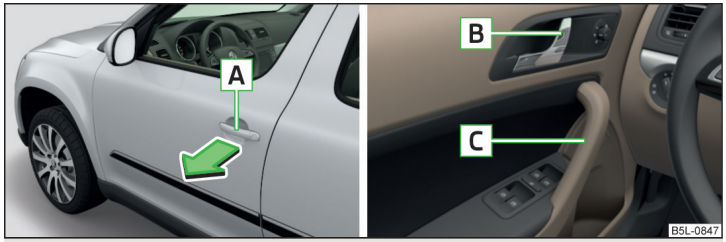

Fig. 38 **Door handle/door opening lever:**

Read and observe and on page 52 first.

Opening from the outside

› Unlock the vehicle.

› Pull on the door handle A in the direction of the arrow » Fig. 38.

Opening from the inside
› Pull on door opening lever B of the door and push the door away from you.

Closing from the inside
› Grasp pull handle C and close the door.

WARNING
- Make sure that the door has closed correctly as it can open suddenly while driving – risk of death!
- Only open and close the door when there is no one in the opening/closing range – risk of injury!
- An opened door can close automatically if there is a strong wind or the vehicle is on an incline – risk of injury!
- Never drive with the doors open - it can be fatal!

Child safety lock

Fig. 39 **Rear door: switching the child safety lock on/off**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 52 first.

The child safety lock prevents the rear door from being opened from the inside. The door can only be opened from the outside.

Switching the child safety system on/off » Fig. 39
- Switching on
- Switching off

You can switch the child safety lock on and off using the vehicle key.

Malfunctions

Read and observe ! and ! on page 52 first.

Central locking fault
If the warning light in the driver's door initially flashes quickly for around 2 seconds, and then lights up for 30 seconds without interruption before flashing again slowly, you will need to seek the assistance of a specialist garage.

If the central locking system has failed, only the driver's door can be locked/unlocked using the key. The other doors and the boot lid can be manually locked or unlocked.
▸ Driver's door locking / unlocking » page 194.
▸ Door lock » page 194.
▸ Unlocking the boot lid » page 194.

Failure of the KESSY system
If the following message is displayed in the instrument cluster display, then seek help from a specialist garage.

M **Keyless faulty.**
S **CHECK KEYLESS**

Key battery flat
If the voltage of the key battery is too low, the following message appears in the instrument cluster display.

M **Renew key battery!**
S **KEY BATTERY**

Replace the battery » page 193.

Anti-theft alarm system

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

The anti-theft alarm system (hereinafter referred to as alarm system) increases protection against theft and break-in attempts into the vehicle.

The anti-theft alarm system is activated automatically approximately 30 seconds after the vehicle is locked. This is automatically disabled after release. ▸

The alarm system triggers audible and visual signals if an attempt is made to break into the vehicle (hereafter referred to as alarm).

Triggering the alarm
The alarm is triggered when the following unauthorized actions are carried out on the locked vehicle.
- Opening the bonnet.
- Opening the boot lid.
- Opening the doors.
- Manipulation of the ignition lock.
- Towing the vehicle.
- Movement in the vehicle.
- Sudden and significant voltage drop of the electrical system.
- Uncoupling the trailer.

If the driver's door of a vehicle is unlocked and opened by the lock cylinder, then the alarm is triggered.

Switching off the alarm
The alarm is turned off by pressing the button on the key or switching on the ignition.

CAUTION
Before leaving the vehicle, it must be checked that all of the windows, doors and the sliding/tilting roof are locked in order to ensure the full functionality of the anti-theft alarm system.

Note
The alarm system has its own power source. The working life of the power supply source is 5 years.

Interior monitor and towing protection

Fig. 40
Button for interior monitor and towing protection

Read and observe ! on page 57 first.

The **interior monitor** detects movements inside the locked vehicle and then triggers the alarm.

The **anti-towing** detects tilts in the locked vehicle and then triggers the alarm.

Deactivate the interior monitor and the towing protection if there is a possibility of the alarm being triggered by movements (e.g. by children or animals) within the vehicle interior or if the vehicle has to be transported (e.g. by train or ship) or towed.

Deactivate
› Switch off the ignition.
› Open the driver door.
› Press the symbol key on the B column of the driver's side » Fig. 40.

The illumination of the symbol in the button changes from red to orange.

› Lock the vehicle within 30 seconds.

By disabling the interior monitoring and the anti-towing device, the safe lock is switched off.

CAUTION
The opened glasses storage compartment reduces the effectiveness of the interior monitor. To ensure the full functionality of the interior monitor, the glasses storage compartment must always be closed before locking the vehicle.

Luggage compartment lid

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

When closing the boot lid, do not press on the rear window.

Ensure that the lock is properly engaged after closing the boot lid.

The function of the button in the grip above the licence plate is deactivated when starting off or at a speed of 5 km/hour or more for vehicles with central locking. The function is restored after the vehicle stops and the door is opened.

WARNING

- Never drive with the boot lid open or ajar, as otherwise exhaust gases may get into the interior of the vehicle – risk of poisoning!
- Make sure that when closing the boot lid, no body parts are crushed - there is danger of injury!

Opening/closing

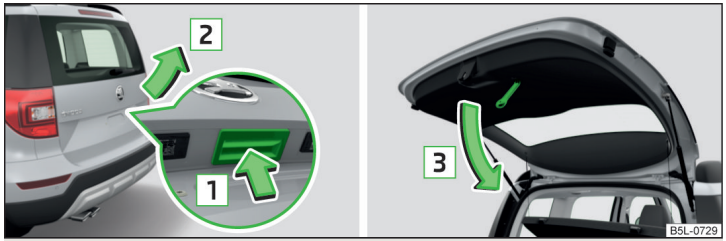

Fig. 41 **Opening / closing tailgate**

Read and observe ! on page 58 first.

After unlocking the vehicle, the boot lid can be opened with the button in the handle above the number plate.

Opening / closing the boot lid » Fig. 41

1 Unlocking the door
2 Open flap
3 Closing the flap (by pulling the handle)

Delayed locking of the boot lid

Read and observe ! on page 58 first.

If the boot lid is unlocked with the symbol button on the key, then the boot lid will automatically relock after closing.

The period after which the boot lid is locked automatically can be extended by a specialist garage.

CAUTION

There is a risk of unwanted entry into the vehicle before the boot lid is locked automatically. We therefore recommend locking the vehicle with the symbol key on the key.

Window operations

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

The windows can be operated mechanically by the winder attached to the respective door panel.

The windows can be operated electrically from the following locations; all windows from the driver's seat and also via the buttons for the windows in the passenger door or the rear doors.

WARNING

The windows should nevertheless be closed carefully – risk of injury!

CAUTION

- If windows are frozen, always remove ice » page 155 before operating the electrical power windows. The window seals and the electrical power window mechanism can otherwise be damaged.
- Always make sure that the windows are closed when you leave the locked vehicle.

For the sake of the environment

At high speeds you should keep the windows closed to prevent unnecessarily high fuel consumption.

Note

When driving always use the existing heating, air conditioning and ventilation system for ventilating the interior of the vehicle. If the windows are opened, dust as well as other dirt can get into the vehicle and in addition the wind noise is more at certain speeds.

Mechanical window lefter

Fig. 42 **Operating the window: left/right**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 58 first.

Using the respective window crank only one window can be operated mechanically.

Opening

› Lift the crank in the direction of arrow A » Fig. 42.

Closing

› Turn the crank in the direction of the arrow B » Fig. 42.

Electric window lifters

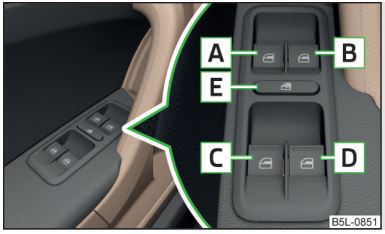

Fig. 43
Window lifter buttons

Read and observe ! and ! on page 58 first.

All windows can be operated from the driver's seat.

Power window buttons » Fig. 43

A Left front door
B Right front door
C Left rear door
D Right rear door
E Disable / enable the buttons in the rear doors

Opening

› Lightly press the appropriate button down and hold it until the window has moved into the desired position.

Releasing the button causes the window to halt immediately.

The window can be completely opened automatically by briefly pressing the button as far as the stop. Renewed pressing of the button causes the window to stop immediately.

Closing

› Pull gently on the top edge of the corresponding button and hold until the window has moved into the desired position.

Releasing the button causes the window to halt immediately.

The window can also be fully closed automatically by pulling the button up to the stop. Renewed pulling of the button causes the window to stop immediately.

Disable / enable the buttons in the rear doors

› Press the button E » Fig. 43.

When the buttons are disabled in the rear doors, the warning light in the button E lights up.

After switching the ignition off, it is still possible to open or close the windows for approx. 10 minutes.

After the driver's or passenger's door is opened, it is only possible to operate the window using button A » Fig. 43, in which case it has to be pressed or pulled for approx. 2 seconds.

The window lift mechanism is equipped with protection against overheating. Repeated opening and closing of the window can cause this mechanism to overheat. If this happens, it will not be possible to operate the window for a short time. You will be able to operate the window again as soon as the overheating protection has cooled down.

WARNING

- The system is fitted with a force limiter » page 60. If there is an obstacle, the closing process is stopped and the window goes down by several centimetres. However, the windows should be closed carefully – risk of injury.
- If the rear seats are accommodating people who are not completely independent, e.g. children, it is recommended that for safety reasons the buttons in the rear doors are disabled with the button E .

CAUTION

- In the winter, ice accumulating on the surface of the window may cause there to be more resistance when closing the window. The window will stop and move back several centimetres.
- Keep the windows clean to ensure the correct functionality of the electric windows.
- Always close the windows before disconnecting the battery.

Opening the windows in the front passenger door and in the rear doors

Fig. 44
Power window button

Read and observe ! and ! on page 58 first.

There is a button in the front passenger door and in the rear doors for that window.

Opening

› Lightly press the button **downwards** and hold it until the window has moved into the desired position.

Releasing the button causes the window to halt immediately.

The window can be completely opened automatically by briefly pressing the **down** button as far as the stop. Renewed pressing of the button causes the window to stop immediately.

Closing

› Lightly press the button **upwards** and hold it until the window has moved into the desired position.

Releasing the button causes the window to halt immediately.

The window can be completely closed automatically by briefly pressing the **up** button as far as the stop. Releasing the button causes the window to halt immediately.

Force limit

Read and observe ! and ! on page 58 first.

The electrical power window system is fitted with a force limiter.

If there is an obstacle, the closing process is stopped and the window goes down by several centimetres.

If the obstacle prevents the window from being closed during the next 10 seconds, the closing process is interrupted once again and the window goes down by several centimetres.

If you attempt to close the window again within 10 seconds of the window being moved down for the second time, even though the obstacle was not yet been removed, the closing process is only stopped. During this time it is not possible to automatically close the window. The force limiter is still switched on.

The force limiter is only switched off if you attempt to close the window again within the next 10 seconds - **the window will now close with full force!**

If you wait longer than 10 seconds, the force limiter is switched on again.

Window convenience operation

Read and observe ! and ! on page 58 first.

The convenience operation of the windows offers the possibility of opening or closing all the windows at once.

Convenience operation can take place in one of the following ways.

Opening

› Press and hold the symbol button on the key.
› Keep the key in the locking cylinder of the driver's door in the unlock position until all electrically operated windows are open.
› Press and hold he central locking button in the area of the symbol » Fig. 37 *on page 54*.
› Switch off the ignition, open the driver's door and hold the key A until it stops in the open position » Fig. 43 *on page 59*.

Closing

› Press and hold the symbol button on the key.
› Keep the key in the locking cylinder of the driver's door in the lock position until all the electrically operated windows are closed.
› Press and hold he central locking button in the area of the symbol » Fig. 37 *on page 54*.
› Switch off the ignition, open the driver's door and hold the key A until it stops in the closed position » Fig. 43 *on page 59*.
› In the KESSY system, hold your finger on the sensor on the outside of the door handle of the front door » Fig. 36 *on page 53*.

The setting for the window convenience operation is in the MAXI DOT display in the **Window op.** menu item. » page 47.

The prerequisite for ensuring that the convenience operating feature correctly is the automatic opening/closing of all windows is operational.

Convenience opening or closing the window using the key in the driver's door locking cylinder is only possible within 45 seconds after locking the vehicle.

The movement of the window is stopped immediately when the respective button is released.

Malfunctions

Read and observe ! and ! on page 58 first.

If the battery has been disconnected and reconnected, it is possible that the automatic window lifter will not operate. The system must be activated.

Activation sequence

› Switch on the ignition.
› Pull the top edge of the button and close the window.
› Release the button.
› Pull the relevant button upwards again for approx. 1 seconds, and keep it pressed down.

Panorama sliding/tilting roof

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

The panorama sliding/tilting roof (hereinafter referred to as sliding/tilting roof) can only be operated when the ignition is turned on and when the outdoor temperature is no lower than -20 °C.

The sliding/tilting roof can still be operated for approx. 10 minutes after switching the ignition off. However, as soon as the driver or front passenger's door is opened it is no longer possible to operate the sliding/tilting roof.

! CAUTION

Always close the sliding/tilting roof before disconnecting the battery.

Operation

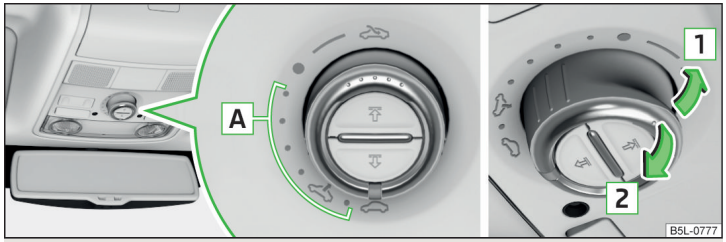

Fig. 45 **Operation of the sliding/tilting roof**

Read and observe ! on page 61 first.

The sun roof can be operated with the rotary switch.

Operation of the sliding/tilting roof

- Open fully
- A Open partially
- • Comfort position
- 1 Opening (switch in position)
- 2 Closing (switch in position)

! WARNING

When operating the sliding/tilting roof, proceed with caution to avoid causing crushing injuries – risk of injury!

! CAUTION

During the winter it may be necessary to remove any ice and snow in the vicinity of the sliding/tilting roof before opening it to prevent any damage to the opening mechanism.

Force limiter

Read and observe ! on page 61 first.

The sliding/tilting roof is fitted with a force limiter.

If there is an obstacle, the closing process is stopped and the window goes down by several centimetres.

The sliding / tilting roof can be fully closed without a force limiter by pulling on the recess in the switch in the arrow direction 2 » Fig. 45 *on page 62* until the sliding / tilting roof is fully closed .

Convenience operation of sliding / tilting roof

Read and observe ! on page 61 first.

The comfort controls makes it possible to open or close the sliding/tilting roof using the key or the KESSY system above the sensor in the door handle of the front door.

Tilting roof

The sliding/tilting roof can be opened as follows.

› Press and hold the symbol button on the key.
› Hold the key in the unlock position in the driver's door lock.

Closing

The sliding/tilting roof can be closed as follows.

› Press and hold the symbol button on the key.
› Hold the key in the lock position in the driver's door lock.
› In the KESSY system, hold your finger on the sensor on the outside of the door handle of the front door » Fig. 36 *on page 53*.

By interrupting the locking process, the closing operation is interrupted.

! WARNING

Close the sliding/tilting roof carefully – risk of injury!

Sliding / tilting roof malfunction

Read and observe ! on page 61 first.

If the battery has been disconnected and reconnected, it is possible that the sliding/tilting roof will not operate. The sun roof must be activated.

Activation sequence

› Switch on the ignition.
› Set the switch to the position » Fig. 45 *on page 62*.
› Press the switch on the recess E down and pull forwards.

The sliding/tilting roof opens and closes again after around 10 seconds.

› Release the lever.

Electrical operation of the sunblind

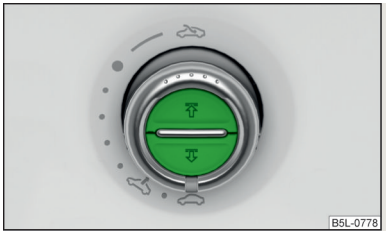

Fig. 46
Operation of the sun blind

Read and observe ! on page 61 first.

The sliding sun blind (hereinafter referred to as sun blind) can be opened or closed using the buttons.

Operation of the sun blind » Fig. 46
- Opening
- Closing

By briefly pressing the button, the sun blind is fully opened or closed. The movement of the sun blind can be stopped by briefly pressing any key.

By pressing and holding the key, the sun blind is opened or closed in the desired position. By releasing the key, the opening or closing process is stopped.

! WARNING

When operating the sun blind, proceed with caution to avoid causing crushing injuries – risk of injury!

Malfunction of the sun blind

Read and observe ! on page 61 first.

If the battery has been disconnected and reconnected, it is possible that the sun blind will not operate correctly. The sun blind must be activated.

Activation sequence
› Switch on the ignition.
› Set the switch to the position » Fig. 46 *on page 63*.
› Press the button and hold down.

The sun screen opens and closes again after around 10 seconds.

› Release the button.

Lights and visibility

Lights

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Unless otherwise stated, the lights only work when the ignition is switched on.

The arrangement of the controls right-hand drive models may differ from the layout shown in » Fig. 47 *on page 64*. The symbols which mark the positions of the controls are identical.

Keep the headlights lenses clean » page 155, *Headlight glasses*.

WARNING

The automatic driving lamp control **AUTO** only operates as a support and does not release the driver from his responsibility to check the lights and, if necessary, to switch on the light depending on the prevailing light conditions.

Note

The headlights may mist up temporarily. When the driving lights are switched on, the light outlet surfaces are free from mist after a short period, although the headlight lenses may still be misted up in the peripheral areas. This mist has no influence on the life of the lighting system.

Operating the lights

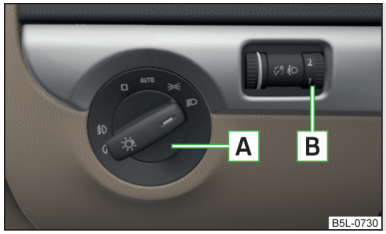

Fig. 47
Light switch and control dial for the headlight beam range regulation

Read and observe ! on page 64 first.

Switching lights on and off

Depending on the equipment configuration, the light switch A » Fig. 47 can be turned to one of the following positions.

0 Switching off lights (except daytime running lights)
AUTO Switching lights on/off automatically » page 66
Switching on the side light or parking light » page 68
Switching on the low beam

Headlight range control

Turning the rotary switch B » Fig. 47 from position **–** to **3** gradually activates the headlight beam control, thereby shortening the beam of light.

The positions of the width of illumination correspond approximately to the following car load.

– Front seats occupied, boot empty
1 All seats occupied, boot empty
2 All seats occupied, boot loaded
3 Driver seat occupied, boot loaded

Xenon headlight

The Xenon bulbs adapt automatically to the load and driving state of the vehicle when the ignition is switched on and when driving. Vehicles that are equipped with Xenon headlights do not have a manual headlight range adjustment control.

WARNING

Always adjust the headlight beam to meet the following conditions.
- The vehicle does not dazzle other road users, especially oncoming vehicles.
- The beam range is sufficient for safe driving.

Note

- The light switch is in position or **AUTO** and the ignition is turned off, the low beam is switched off automatically [1] and the status light is lit. The side light is switched off when the ignition key is removed, for vehicles with the KESSY system after switching off the ignition and opening the driver's door.
- If there is a fault in the light switch, the low beam comes on automatically.

Daylight running lights (DAY LIGHT)

Read and observe ! on page 64 first.

The daytime running light (hereinafter referred to as "function") lights the front and rear vehicle area (only valid for some countries).

The daytime running lights are switched on automatically if the following conditions are met.

✓ The light switch is in the position **0** or **AUTO**.
✓ The ignition is switched on.
✓ The function is activated.

Function for vehicles with MAXI DOT display disable / enable

The function menu item **Dayt. r. light** can be deactivated / activated » page 47, *Menu item* **Settings**.

Disable function for vehicles with segment display

› Switch off the ignition.
› Pull the indicator / main beam lever towards the steering wheel, push down and hold in this position.
› Switch on the ignition.
› Hold the lever in this position for min. 3 seconds after switching on the ignition.

The deactivation of the function is confirmed by an audible signal.

Enable function for vehicles with segment display

› Switch off the ignition.
› Pull the indicator / main beam lever towards the steering wheel, push up and hold in this position.
› Switch on the ignition.
› Hold the lever in this position for min. 3 seconds after switching on the ignition.

The activation of the function is confirmed by an audible signal.

WARNING

Always switch on the low beam when visibility is poor.

Turn signal and main beam

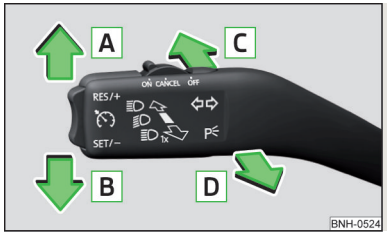

Fig. 48
Operating lever: Turn signal and main beam operation

Read and observe ! on page 64 first.

Lever positions » Fig. 48

A When the right turn signal light is switched on, the warning light flashes in the instrument cluster
B When the left turn signal light is switched on, the warning light flashes in the instrument cluster
C Switch on main beam (spring setting) – the warning light illuminates in the instrument cluster
D Switching off main beam / switching on headlamp flasher (spring-loaded position)

The **main beam** can only be switched on when the low beam lights are on.

[1] Does not apply to the position **AUTO**, as long as the conditions are met for the COMING HOME function » page 67.

The **headlight flasher** can be operated even if the ignition is switched off.

The **turn signal light** switches itself off automatically when driving around a curve or after making a turn.

"Convenience turn signal"
When the control lever is lightly pressed to the pressure point A or B then the respective turn-signal lamp flashes three times.

The "Lane ch. flash" can be activated / deactivated via the Maxi DOT display in the **Lane ch. flash**» page 47, *Menu item* **Settings** menu item.

! WARNING
Only turn on the main beam or the headlight flasher if other road users will not be dazzled.

Automatic driving lamp control

Fig. 49
Light switch: AUTO position

Read and observe ! on page 64 first.

The light switch is in position **AUTO** » Fig. 49 then depending on the equipment the automatic switch on / off the lights corresponding to the light or weather conditions (rain) takes place.

If the light switch is in position **AUTO**, the lettering **AUTO** illuminates next to the light switch. If the light is switched on automatically, the symbol next to the light switch also lights up.

Automatic driving light control during rain
The daytime running lights are switched on automatically if the following conditions are met:

✓ The light switch is in the position **AUTO**.
✓ The windscreen wipers are on for more than 15 s.

The light turns off about 4 minutes after turning off the wipers.

! CAUTION
Poorer visibility is evaluated by a motor mounted below the windscreen in the holder of the interior mirror sensor. Do not attach any stickers or similar objects in front of the light sensor on the windscreen in order to avoid impairing the function or its reliability.

Xenon headlight

Read and observe ! on page 64 first.

The Xenon headlight (hereinafter referred to as system) ensures that the roads are illuminated independent of the traffic and weather conditions.

The system automatically adjusts the light cone in front of the vehicle due to the driving data (e.g. vehicle speed and load conditions, steering angle, using the wiper).

The system works as long as the light switch is in position **AUTO**.

The system operates automatically in the following modes.

Out of town mode
The cone of light in front of the vehicle is similar to the low beam.

City mode
The cone of light in front of the vehicle is adapted so that the adjacent sidewalks, crossings, pedestrian crossings, etc., are also illuminated. The mode is active at speeds of 15-50 km/h.

Motorway mode
The cone of light in front of the vehicle is adjusted so that the driver can respond in time to an obstruction or other hazard in time. The mode is active at speeds above 120 km/h.

Rain mode
The cone of light in front of the vehicle is adjusted so that the driver can reduce the glare from oncoming vehicles in rain.

The mode is active at speeds of 20-70 km/h and if the windscreen wipers continuously operate for a period of time longer than about 2 minutes. The deactivation of the mode is carried out a few minutes after switching off the wiper.

Dynamic cornering lights
The cone of light in front of the vehicle is adjusted to the steering angle so that the road in the curve is illuminated. This function is active at speeds greater than 10 km/h and in all system modes.

Tourist lights (Travel mode)
This mode makes it possible to drive in countries with opposing traffic system (driving on the left/right) without dazzling the oncoming vehicles.

If this mode is activated, there is no automatic cone of light adaptation in front of the vehicle. When switching on the ignition the warning light flashes for 10 seconds.

This mode can be enabled / disabled via the MAXI DOT display in the **Travel mode**» page 47, *Menu item* **Settings** menu option.

! WARNING

If there is a system malfunction the headlights are automatically lowered to the emergency position, which prevents a possible dazzling of oncoming traffic. This reduces the cone of light in front of the vehicle. Drive carefully and visit a specialist garage as soon as possible.

Front and rear fog light

Fig. 50
Light switch – switch on front and rear fog light

Read and observe ! on page 64 first.

Turn fog lights on/off
› Turn the light switch to position or » Fig. 50.
› Pull the light switch to position 1; the indicator lamp in the light switch illuminates.

It is switched off in reverse order.

Turn rear fog lamp on/off
› Turn the light switch to position or » Fig. 50.
› Pull the light switch to position 2; the indicator lamp in the light switch illuminates.

It is switched off in reverse order.

If the vehicle is not fitted with fog lights, the rear fog light is switched on by pulling out the light switch directly to the only possible setting.

i Note
While driving with an accessory connected to the trailer socket (e.g. trailer, bike carrier) only the equipment is illuminated by the fog light. The towing device must be installed at the factory or from the ŠKODA original accessories.

Fog lights with the CORNER function

Read and observe ! on page 64 first.

The function CORNER provides better illumination of the nearby environment when turning, manoeuvring or anything similar.

The function automatically switches on the fog lights on each side of the vehicle, if the following conditions are met.
✓ The turn signal is switched on or the front wheels are turned sharply [1].
✓ The vehicle speed is below 40 km/h.
✓ The low beam is switched on.
✓ The fog lights are not switched on.

i Note
The two fog lights are switched on when you shift into the reverse gear.

COMING HOME / LEAVING HOME

Read and observe ! on page 64 first.

The function COMING HOME ensures that the vehicle's environment is illuminated after switching off the ignition and opening the driver's door.

[1] If both switch-on conditions are conflicting, for example, if the front wheels are turned to the left and the right turn signal light is switched on, the turn signal light has the higher priority.

The function LEAVING HOME ensures that the vehicle's environment is illuminated after unlocking the vehicle with the radio remote control unit.

The function switches the light on only if there is poorer visibility and the light switch is in the position **AUTO**.

Enabling / disabling and setting function
The functions and settings of the illumination time can be activated / deactivated via the MAXI DOT display in the menu items **Coming Home** or **Leaving Home** » page 47.

CAUTION
- Poorer visibility is evaluated by a motor mounted below the windscreen in the holder of the interior mirror sensor. Do not attach any stickers or similar objects in front of the light sensor on the windscreen in order to avoid impairing the function or its reliability.
- If this option is always enabled, then the battery is heavily loaded.

Hazard warning light system

Fig. 51
Button for hazard warning light system

Read and observe ! on page 64 first.

The hazard warning lights make other road users aware of your vehicle.

The function switches on all indicators.

Switching on/off
› Press the button ⚠ » Fig. 51.

When you turn it on the warning light ⚠ flashes in the button and at the same time the warning lights ⇔ in the instrument cluster.

The hazard warning light system can also be operated if the ignition is switched off.

If one of the airbags is deployed, the hazard warning light system will switch on automatically.

When the hazard warning system is on and the indicator light is switched on (e.g. when turning), the hazard warning lights are switched off temporarily and only the turn signal flashes on the relevant side of the vehicle.

Parking lights

Read and observe ! on page 64 first.

The side light is provided for lighting of the parked vehicle.

The function switches on the side lights.

Switching on the side light P on one side
› Switch off the ignition.
› Press the control lever to position A or B as far as the stop » Fig. 48 *on page 65*.

The parking lights on the right or left side of the vehicle are turned on.

Switching on the side light on both sides ≫C
› With the ignition switched on turn the light switch to position ≫C.
› Switch off the ignition.
› Lock the vehicle.

After pulling out the ignition key and opening the driver's door, an audible warning sounds.

After a few seconds or after closing the driver's door, the audible alarm is turned off, but the parking lights will remain switched on.

CAUTION
- Turning on the parking light means the battery is heavily loaded.
- The parking light cannot be turned off automatic due to the low battery charge level.
- If the two-sided parking lights are switched on when the ignition is off, then there is no automatic switching off of the parking light.

Driving abroad

Read and observe ! on page 64 first.

When driving in countries with opposing traffic system (traffic on the left/right), your headlights may dazzle oncoming traffic. In order to avoid this, the headlights must be adjusted at a specialist garage.

You can adjust the settings of the Xenon headlights in the menu of the MAXI DOT display under the menu point **Travel mode** » page 47, *Menu item* **Settings**.

Interior lights

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

The inner lighting also works if the ignition is switched off.

With the ignition off, the light turns off automatically after about 10 minutes.

Front interior light

Fig. 52 **Operation of the front light: Version 1/version 2**

Positions of the rocker switch A » Fig. 52

- Switching on
- Automatic operation (centre position)
- 0 Switching off

There is no icon available for the centre position (automatic operation) in Version 2.

Switch for turning the reading lights B on / off » Fig. 52

- Reading lamp left
- Reading lamp right

Automatic operation of the lamp – position

The system is **turned on** when any of the following is present.

- The vehicle is unlocked.
- One of the doors or the luggage compartment lid is being opened.
- The ignition key is removed.

The system is **turned off** when any of the following is present.

- The vehicle is locked.
- The ignition is switched on.
- About 30 seconds after all the doors have been closed.

Rear interior light

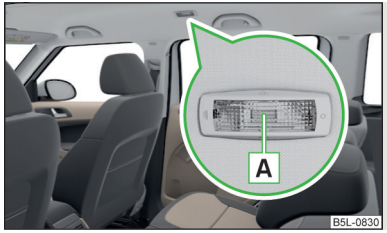

Fig. 53
Interior lights at the rear

Rear light: movement of the lens A » Fig. 53

- Switching on
- Automatic operation (centre position) [1]
- 0 Switching off

[1] In this position, apply the same rules to the rear interior light as for the front interior light » page 69, *Front interior light*.

Front door warning light

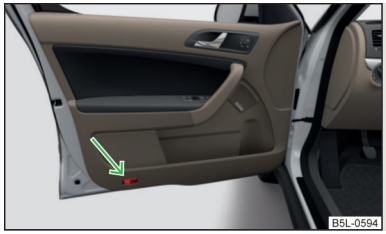

Fig. 54
Front door warning light

The warning light » Fig. 54 turns on when the front door is opened.

The warning light turns off when the front door is closed.

There is a reflector installed here on some vehicles instead.

Instrument lighting

Fig. 55
Controls for the instrument lighting

The brightness of the instrument lights can be set only if the parking, low beam or high beam is switched on.

Turning the knob » Fig. 55

Adjust brightness of the instrument lighting.

Note

On vehicles with MAXI DOT display » page 43 the brightness of the instrument lighting is set automatically. A manual brightness adjustment can therefore only have a limited effect.

Visibility

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

WARNING

Make sure that the view outside is not covered by ice, snow, mist or other objects.

Windscreen and rear window heater

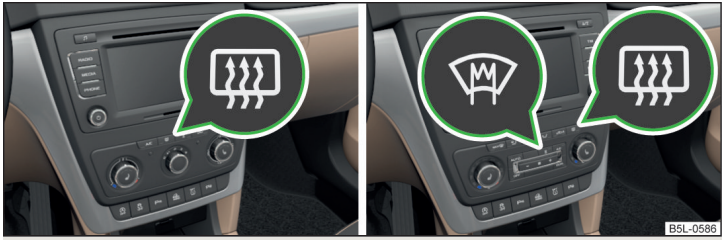

Fig. 56 **Buttons for the rear and front window heating: manual air conditioning/Climatronic**

Read and observe ! on page 70 first.

The heating for quick defrosting and ventilation of the front /and rear window.

Buttons for the heating in the centre console (depending on vehicle equipment) » Fig. 56

Switching the rear window heater on/off

Switching the windscreen heater on/off

When the heater is switched on, a lamp lights up inside the button.

The heating only works when the engine is running.

The heater automatically switches off after approximately 10 minutes.

Note

- If the on-board voltage decreases, the heating switches off automatically » page 175, *Automatic load deactivation*.
- If the light is flashing inside the button the heater is off due to low battery.
- The position and shape of the switch may vary according to the equipment fitted.

Sun visors in the front

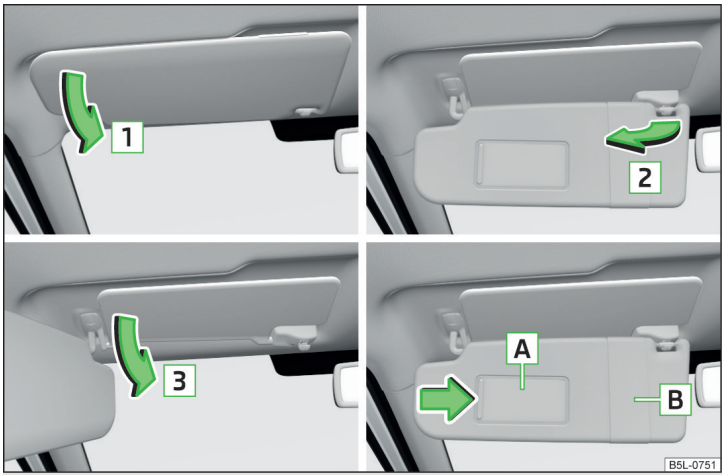

Fig. 57 **Fold down the cover / fold up cover / fold down secondary visor / make-up mirror and tape**

Read and observe ! on page 70 first.

Operation and description of the sun visor » Fig. 57

1 Fold down the cover
2 Swivel cover towards the door
3 Fold down the auxiliary cover

A Make-up mirror with cover (the cover can be pushed in the direction of the arrow)
B Tape for storage of small light objects

! WARNING

When objects are attached to the sun visor, the visor can not be pivoted to the side windows. This might result in injuries to the occupants if the head airbag is deployed.

Windscreen wipers and washers

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

The windscreen wipers and the wash system only operate if the ignition is switched on and the bonnet and boot are closed[1)].

Winter setting of the windscreen wiper

If the windscreen wipers are in rest position, they cannot be folded out from the windscreen. For this reason we recommend adjusting the windscreen wipers in winter so that they can be folded out from the windscreen easily.

- ▸ Switch on the windscreen wipers.
- ▸ Switch off the ignition.

The windscreen wipers remain in the position in which they were when switching off the ignition.

The service position can also be used as a winter position » page 195.

! WARNING

- Properly maintained windscreen wiper blades are essential for clear visibility and safe driving » page 195.
- Do not use the windscreen washer system at low temperatures, without heating the windscreen beforehand. The window washer fluid could otherwise freeze on the windscreen and restrict the view to the front.

[1)] On vehicles which do not have a contact switch for the bonnet, the windshield wiper and wash system operates also when the bonnet is opened.

CAUTION

- In cold temperatures and during the winter, check before switching on the ignition that the wiper blades are not frozen to the windscreen. If the windscreen wipers are switched on when the blades are frozen to the windscreen, this may damage both the blades and windscreen wiper motor!
- Carefully peel frozen wiper blades off the pane.
- Remove snow and ice from the windscreen wipers before driving.
- If the windscreen wipers are handled carelessly, there is a risk of damage to the windscreen.
- Do not switch on the ignition if the front wiper arms are retracted. The wiper arms could damage the paint of the bonnet.
- If there is an obstacle on the windscreen, the wiper will try to push away the obstacle. The wiper stops automatically after 5 attempts to eliminate the obstacle, in order to avoid a damage to the wiper. Remove the obstacle and switch the wiper on again.

Note

- Each time the ignition switches off for the third time, the position of the windscreen wipers changes. This counteracts an early fatigue of the wiper rubbers.
- The windscreen washer nozzles for the windscreen are heated when the engine is running and the outside temperature is less than approx. +10 °C.

Windscreen wipers and washers

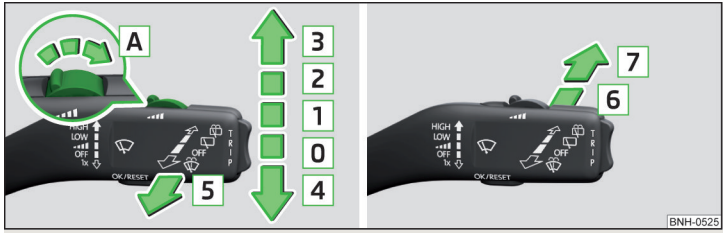

Fig. 58 **Operating the wiper and washer: front/rear**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 71 first.

Lever positions

- 0 **OFF** Wipers off
- 1 Depending on specification:
  - Intermittent windscreen wiping
  - Automatic windscreen wiping in rain
- 2 **LOW** Slow windscreen wiping
- 3 **HIGH** Rapid windscreen wiping
- 4 **1x** Flick windscreen wiping, service position of the wiper arms (spring-loaded position)
- 5 Spraying and wiping the windscreen (sprung position)
- 6 Wiping the rear window pane (the windscreen wiper wipes at regular intervals after a few seconds)
- 7 Spraying and wiping the rear window (sprung position)
- A Depending on specification:
  - To set the wiper interval for the windscreen
  - Sensitivity setting of the automatic wiping with rain

  By setting the switch in the direction of the arrow wipers sweep more often.

Spraying and wiping the windscreen

After releasing the operating lever, the wipers will make from 3 to 4 wiper strokes.

At a speed of more than 2 km/h, the wiper wipes once again 5 seconds after the last wiper stroke in order to wipe the last drops from the windscreen. This function can be activated/deactivated by a specialist garage.

Spraying and wiping the rear window

After releasing the operating lever, the wipers will make from 2 to 3 wiper strokes.

The operating lever remains in position 6.

Automatic rear window wiping

If the lever is in position 2 or 3 » Fig. 58, the rear window is wiped every 30 or 10 seconds if the vehicle's speed exceeds 5 km/h.

If automatic windscreen wiping in rain is activated (the operating lever is in the position 1) the function is only active if the windscreen wipers operate in continuous mode (no break between each wiping process).

Automatic rear window wiping can be activated / deactivated via the MAXI DOT display in the menu item **Rear wiper** » page 47.

WARNING

Automatic wiping during rain is only a support. The driver is not released from the responsibility to set the function of the windscreen wipers manually depending on the visibility conditions.

Note

- If the operating lever is in the position 2 or 3 and the speed of the vehicle drops below 4 km / h, the wiping speed is reduced. The original wiping speed is restored step by step when the speed of the vehicle exceeds 8 km/h.
- The rear window is wiped once automatically if the windscreen wipers are on when reverse gear is selected.

Headlight cleaning system

Read and observe ! and ! on page 71 first.

To clean the headlights, the headlamp is also sprayed after every five squirts.

The headlight washer system works under the following conditions.

✓ The ignition is switched on.
✓ The low beam is switched on.
✓ The outside temperature is about -12° C to +39° C.

To ensure the correct functioning of the system, even in winter, this needs to be regularly cleared of snow and ice, e.g. free with a de-icing spray.

CAUTION

Never remove the nozzles from the headlight cleaning system by hand – risk of damage!

Rear mirror

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

WARNING

- Convex (curved outward) or aspheric exterior mirrors increase the field of vision. They do, however, make objects appear smaller in the mirror. These mirrors are therefore only of limited use for estimating distances to the following vehicles.
- Whenever possible use the interior mirror for estimating the distances to the following vehicles.

WARNING

The mirrors with automatic dimming contain an electrolyte liquid which can escape if mirror glass is broken.

- The leaking electrolytic fluid can irritate the skin, eyes and breath apparatus.
- If your eyes or skin come into contact with the electrolytic fluid, immediately wash the affected area for a few minutes long with a lot of water. If necessary get medical assistance.

Interior mirror dimming

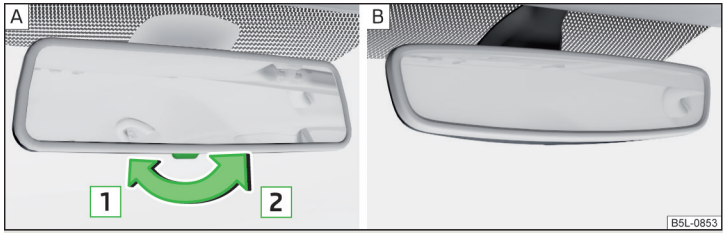

Fig. 59 **Interior mirror: manual dimming/auto-darkening**

Read and observe ! on page 73 first.

Mirrors with manual dimming » Fig. 59 - A

1 Basic position of the mirror
2 Mirror blackout

Mirror with automatic dimming

After starting the engine, the mirror darkens » Fig. 59 - B automatically.

The mirror dimming is controlled by the light incident on the sensors on the front and back of the mirror.

When the interior lights are switched on or the reverse gear is engaged, the mirror moves back into the basic position (not dimmed).

Do not attach external devices (e.g. navigation systems) on to the windscreen or in the vicinity of the interior mirror » !.

! WARNING

- The illuminated display of an external navigation device can lead to operational faults to the automatic dimming interior mirror – risk of accident.
- Automatic mirror dimming only operates correctly if the light striking the sensor is not affected by other objects.

Exterior mirrors

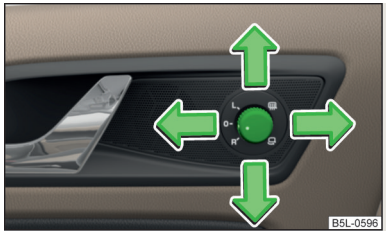

Fig. 60
Exterior mirror operation

Read and observe ! on page 73 first.

The knob can be moved into the following positions (depending on vehicle equipment).

L Adjust the left mirror
R Adjust the right mirror
0 Switch off mirror control
Mirror heater
Fold in both mirrors housings, to fold back move the knob to another position

The **mirror heating** only works when the engine is running.

Adjust the position
The mirror can be adjusted to the desired position by moving the knob in the direction of the arrow » Fig. 60.

The movement of the mirror surface is identical to the movement of the rotary knob.

If the electrical mirror setting fails at any time, the mirrors can be adjusted by hand by pressing on the edge of the mirror surface.

Synchronous adjustment of the mirror
› Activate the synchronous adjustment of the mirror above the MAXI DOT display in the menu item **Mirror adjust.** » page 47, *Menu item* **Settings**.
› Turn the knob for the mirror control to the position for the driver mirror adjustment.
› Adjust the mirror to the desired position.

Folding-in both of the exterior mirrors using the remote control key
› Close all windows.
› Press on the remote control key for about 2 seconds.

The exterior mirror is folded back into the driving position when the ignition is switched on.

Mirror with automatic dimming
The exterior mirror blackout is controlled together with the automatic dimming interior mirror » page 73.

Memory function for mirrors
Valid for vehicles with electrically adjustable driver's seat.

It is possible to save the current setting of the exterior mirror when saving the driver's seat position with » page 76, *Memory Function of the electrically adjustable seat*or » page 77, *Memory function of the remote control key*.

Fold in passenger's mirror
Valid for vehicles with electrically adjustable driver's seat.

The passenger-side mirror can be tilted to the stored position to improve the view to the curb when reversing.

Operating conditions.
✓ The function is activated via the MAXI DOT display in the menu item **Mirror down** » page 47, *Menu item* **Settings**.
✓ The mirror setting has been previously stored » page 76, *Memory Function of the electrically adjustable seat*or » page 77, *Memory function of the remote control key*.
✓ The reverse gear is engaged.
✓ The knob for the mirror control is in the position for the passenger mirror adjustment.

The mirror returns to its initial position after the rotary knob is put into another position or if the speed is more than 15 km/h.

WARNING

Do not touch the exterior mirror surfaces, if the exterior mirror heating is switched on - hazard of burning.

CAUTION

- Never adjust retractable exterior mirrors by hand - risk of damaging the electric mirror actuator!
- When the mirror is swung by external influences (due to impact during manoeuvring, for example), then first **fold-in** the mirror by turning the knob and wait for a loud clapping noise.

Seats and head restraints

Front seat

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

WARNING

- Only adjust the driver's seat when the vehicle is stationary – risk of accident!
- Caution when adjusting the seat! You may suffer injuries or bruises as a result of adjusting the seat without paying proper attention.
- The electric front seat adjustment is functional even with the ignition off. Therefore, when leaving the vehicle, never leave people who are not completely independent, such as children, unattended in the vehicle - there is a danger of injury!
- Do not carry any objects on the front passenger seat except objects designed for this purpose (e.g. child seats) – risk of accident!

Note

- After a certain time, play can develop within the adjustment mechanism of the backrest angle.
- For safety reasons, it is not possible to store the seat position in the electric seat memory and remote control key memory if the inclination angle of the seat backrest is more than 102° in relation to the seat cushion.
- Each time you store the position of the electrically adjustable driver's seat and exterior mirrors, the existing setting is deleted.

Manually adjusting seats

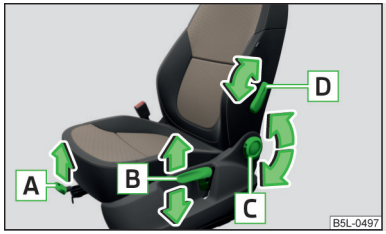

Fig. 61
Control elements on the seat

Read and observe ! on page 75 first.

The seats can be adjusted by the respective operating element being pulled pressed or rotated in the direction of arrows.

Control elements on the seat » Fig. 61

- **A** Adjusting the seat in the longitudinal direction (after releasing the control lever, locking must be audible)
- **B** Adjusting the seat height
- **C** Adjusting the tilt of the backrest (do not lean on the backrest when adjusting)
- **D** Setting the extent of the curvature of the lumbar support

Electrical adjustment

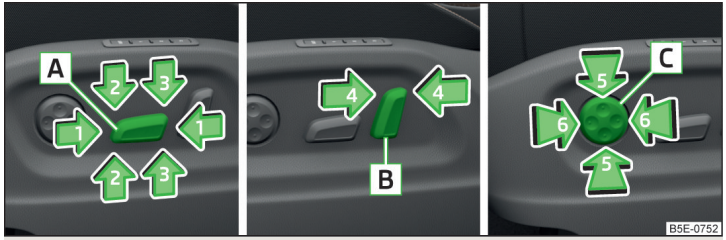

Fig. 62 **Control elements on the seat**

Read and observe ! on page 75 first.

The seats can be adjusted by the respective operating element being pressed in the direction of area of the arrow.

Control elements on the seat » Fig. 62

- **A** seat adjustment
  - **1** - Move in the longitudinal direction
  - **2** - Change in inclination
  - **3** - Change in height
- **B** Adjusting the seat backrest
  - **4** - Change in inclination
- **C** Adjusting lumbar support
  - **5** - Change curvature
  - **6** - The degree of curvature change

Note

If the setting procedure is interrupted, you will need to press the operating element again.

Memory Function of the electrically adjustable seat

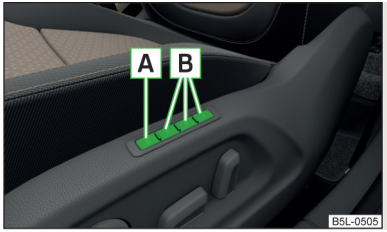

Fig. 63
Memory buttons and SET button

Read and observe ! on page 75 first.

The pre-set buttons on the driver's seat make it possible to save the driver's seat and exterior mirror positions.

Each of the three memory buttons **B** » Fig. 63 can be assigned a set position.

Storing driver's seat and exterior mirror settings for driving forward

› Switch on the ignition.
› Adjust the seat and the two mirrors to the desired position.
› Press the **SET** button (Position **A** » Fig. 63).

› Within 10 seconds after pressing the SET button, press the desired memory button B.

An acknowledgement sound confirms the storage.

Saving front passenger mirror settings when reversing
Above the MAXI DOT display in the Mirror down menu item, the lowering function for the mirror on the passenger side must be enabled for reversing » page 47, *Menu item* Settings.

› Switch on the ignition.
› Press the required memory button B » Fig. 63.
› Turn the knob for the external mirror control to the position for the passenger side mirror adjustment » page 74.
› Engage reverse gear.
› Adjust the front passenger's mirror to the desired position.
› Disengage reverse gear.

The set position of the exterior mirror is stored.

Retrieving the saved setting
The retrieval is possible when turned the ignition is switched on and the vehicle speed is less than 5 km/h or when the ignition key is inserted in the ignition lock.

› Press and hold the desired memory button B » Fig. 63 for a short while.

Stopping the ongoing adjustment
› Press any button on the driver's seat or the button on the remote control key.

Note
Each time you save the seat- and exterior mirror settings for forward travel you also have to re-save the setting of the exterior mirror on the passenger side for reversing.

Memory function of the remote control key

Read and observe ! on page 75 first.

The automatic storage of the driver's seat position and exterior mirror positions when locking the vehicle can be turned on in the memory of the remote control key (hereafter referred to as automatic storage function).

Enable automatic storage
› Unlock the vehicle with the remote control key.
› Press and hold any memory button B » Fig. 63 *on page 76*.
› After the seat has assumed the position stored under this button, at the same time press the button on the remote control key within 10 seconds.

The successful activation of the automatic storage function for each key is confirmed by an acoustic signal.

Storing driver's seat and exterior mirror settings for driving forward
› Enable automatic storage.

When automatic storage is activated, the current positions of the driver's seat and the external mirrors are saved in the memory of the remote control key each time the vehicle is locked.

When the vehicle is next unlocked using the same key, the driver's seat and the external mirrors assume the positions stored in the memory of this key.

Saving front passenger mirror settings when reversing
Above the MAXI DOT display in the Mirror down menu item, the lowering function for the mirror on the passenger side must be enabled for reversing » page 47, *Menu item* Settings.

› Unlock the vehicle with the respective remote control key.
› Switch on the ignition.
› Turn the knob for the external mirror control to the position for the passenger side mirror adjustment » page 74.
› Engage reverse gear.
› Adjust the front passenger's mirror to the desired position.
› Disengage reverse gear.

The adjusted position of the exterior mirror is stored in the remote control key memory.

Disable the function of automatic storage
› Unlock the vehicle with the remote control key.
› Press the SET button (Position A » Fig. 63 *on page 76*) and hold.
› Press the button on the remote control key within 10 seconds.

The successful deactivation of the automatic storage function for each key is confirmed by an acoustic signal.

Stopping the ongoing adjustment
› Press any button on the driver's seat or the button on the remote control key.

Front seat functions

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Front seat heating

Fig. 64
Buttons for heating the front seats

The seat backrests and seats can be heated electrically.

The seat heating can only be switched on when the engine is running.

Buttons for the seat heating » Fig. 64

- Left seat heating
- Right seat heating

Switching on

› Press the button or » Fig. 64.

Pressing once switches the seat heating on at its maximum level.

With repeated pressing of the switch, the intensity of the heating is reduced until it is switched off.

The level of the seat heating is indicated by the number of illuminated warning lights in the switch.

WARNING

If you have impaired sensitivity to pain and/or temperature, e.g. through medication, paralysis or because of chronic illness (e.g. diabetes), we do not recommend using the seat heating. There is a possibility of suffering from burns that are difficult to heal. If the seat heating is used, we recommend to make regular breaks in your journey when driving long distances, so that the body can recuperate from the stress of the journey. Please consult your doctor, who can evaluate your specific condition.

CAUTION

The following instructions should be observed to avoid damage to the seats.

- Do not kneel on the seats or otherwise apply concentrated pressure to them.
- Do not switch on the seat heating for any seats that are not occupied.
- Do not switch on the seat heating if the seat in question has objects attached to or placed on it, for example a child seat, a bag, etc.
- Do not switch on the seat heating if the seat in question has additional protective covers or protective covers on it.

Note

If the on-board voltage decreases, the seat heating switches off automatically » page 175, *Automatic load deactivation*.

Armrest setting

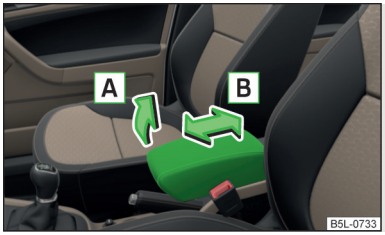

Fig. 65
Adjust armrest

The armrest is adjustable for height and length.

Lifting

› Lift the armrest in the direction of arrow A into one of the six locking positions » Fig. 65.

Folding down

› Lift the armrest in the direction of arrow A until it stops » Fig. 65.

› Fold down the rear armrest.

Move

› Move the cover into the desired position in the direction of the arrow B » Fig. 65.

Note

Push the armrest cover all the way back to the stop before applying the handbrake.

Folding front passenger seat

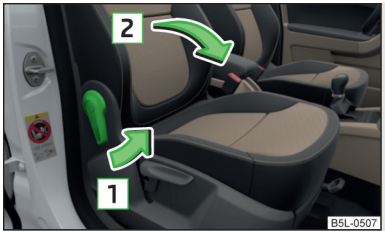

Fig. 66
Folding the front passenger seat forward

The front passenger seat can be folded forward into a horizontal position.

Folding forward

› Place the lever in position 1 » Fig. 66.
› Remove the cover in the direction of the arrow 2.

The locking mechanism must audibly snap into place.

Folding backwards

› Place the lever in position 1 » Fig. 66.
› Fold the seat backrest in the opposite direction of the arrow 2.

The locking mechanism must audibly snap into place.

WARNING

- The front passenger airbag should be switched off when transporting objects on the seat which was folded forwards » page 20, *Deactivating the front passenger airbag*.
- Adjust the seat backrest only when the vehicle is stationary.
- When moving the seat backrest, make sure the seat backrest has been properly secured – check by pulling on the seat backrest.

WARNING (Continued)

- If the seat backrest is folded, passengers may only be transported on the outer seat behind the driver.
- When moving the seat backrest, keep limbs out of the area between the seat and seat backrest – risk of injury!
- Never transport the following items on the seat backrest when folded forwards.
  - Objects that could restrict the driver's view.
  - Objects which make it impossible for the driver to control the vehicle, e.g. if they roll under the pedals, or could protrude into the driver's zone.
  - Objects which could lead to injury to passengers due to a change of direction or braking manoeuvre when accelerating sharply.

Head restraints

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

WARNING

Please note the following points about the headrest settings » page 8, *Correct and safe seated position*.

CAUTION

Store the removed headrests in a clean and secure place (to avoid damage or soiling).

Note

The position of the front and rear outer head restraints is adjustable in height. The middle rear head restraint is only adjustable in two positions.

Adjusting the height, installing and removing the headrests

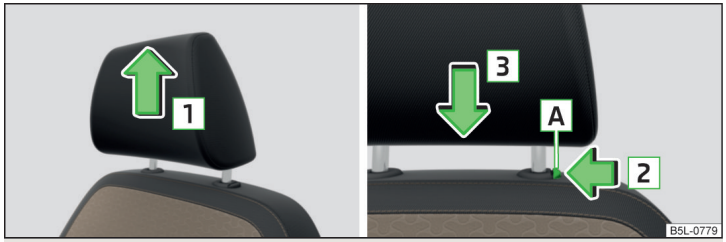

Fig. 67 **Head restraint: Move up / move down**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 79 first.

Setting the height

› Grasp the restraint and move **upwards** in the direction of 1 » Fig. 67.
› In order to push the headrests **downward**, press and hold the safety button A in the direction of arrow 2.
› Press in the support in the direction of arrow 3.

Removing/installing

› Pull the head restraint out of the seat backrest as far as the stop.
› Press the locking button A in the direction of the arrow 2 » Fig. 67 and pull the head restraint out.
› To re-insert the headrest, push it far enough down in the direction of arrow 3 into the seat backrest until the locking button clicks into place.

Rear centre head restraints

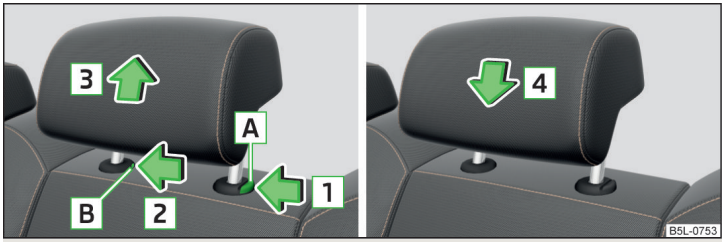

Fig. 68 **Rear centre headrest: removing/installing**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 79 first.

Applies to vehicles using the TOP TETHER system.

Removing/installing

› Pull the head restraint out of the seat backrest as far as the stop.
› Press the locking button A in the direction of arrow 1 » Fig. 68 , while at the same time using a flat screwdriver with a max. width of 5 mm to press the securing button in opening B in the direction of arrow 2.
› Remove the restraint in the direction of arrow 3.
› To re-insert the head restraint, push it far enough down in the direction of arrow 4 into the seat backrest until the locking button clicks into place.

Rear seats

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Setting theSetting the seats in the longitudinal direction

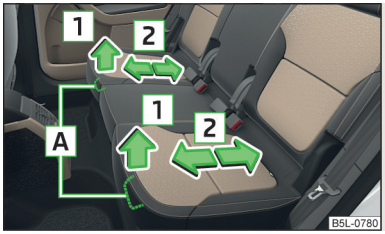

Fig. 69
Adjusting seats in forward/back direction

› Pull lever A in the direction of arrow 1 and move the seat to the desired position in the direction of arrow 2 » Fig. 69.

inclination of the seat backrest

Fig. 70 **Adjusting the seat backrest**

› Pull lever A on the lower portion in the direction of arrow 1 » Fig. 70.
› Adjust the desired inclination of the seat back in the direction of arrow 2.

WARNING

Check for yourself that the seat backrest is engaged by pulling on it.

Fold seat backrest forwards and fold down seat completely

Fig. 71 **Safety position of seat belt / folding the seat completely forward**

Fig. 72
Lock forward folded seats

Folding the seat backrest forwards

› Insert the seat belt buckle A » Fig. 71 in the hole in the side panel - security position.
› Remove the head restraint from the rear middle seat » page 80.
› Push the outer rear seats towards the rear as far as they will go » page 81, *Setting theSetting the seats in the longitudinal direction*.
› Pull the lever A » Fig. 70 *on page 81* and fold the seat backrests of the outer rear seats onto the seat cushion as far as the stop.
› Fold the rear centre seat backrest forwards in the same way.
› Then pull the lever A » Fig. 70 *on page 81* again and push the seat back down until it clicks into place in a lower position.

Folding seats fully forwards and locking them

› If the outer rear seat is fully folded forward, push it towards the rear as far as it can go.
› Pull the lever B » Fig. 71 in the direction of the arrow 1 and push the seat completely forward in the direction of arrow 2.

› Secure the folded forward seat with the aid of the fixing belt B to a guide rod of the head restraint in the front seat » Fig. 72.

WARNING

Immediately lock the folded forward seat to a guide rod on the front head restraint using the fixing belt - risk of injury.

CAUTION

▪ Before folding the rear middle seat forward, make sure that the storage compartment, the ashtray and the cup holder in the rear part of the centre console are closed - risk of damage.
▪ Only keep the seats in the folded forward position for as long as necessary to transport cargo - there is a risk of damaging the front seat backrests. The seats must be folded back once the cargo has been transported.
▪ If the outer seat is not in the rear end position when folding forward, damage can occur to the locking bolts when unlocking the seat.

Unlocking and removing seats

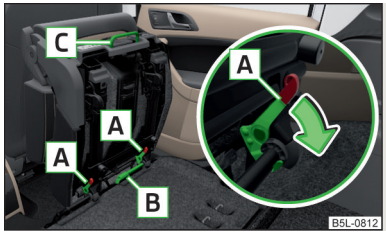

Fig. 73
Unlocking the folded forward seat and carrying handles on the seat surface

› Fold the seat forward » page 81, *Fold seat backrest forwards and fold down seat completely*.
› Unlock the folded seat by pressing seat locks A in the direction of arrow » Fig. 73.
› Remove the seat using the carrying handles B or C.

WARNING

The following guidelines must be observed » page 10, *Correct seated position for the passengers in the rear seats*.

Note

The outer seats are not mutually interchangeable. In the rear area the left seat is marked with the letter **L** and the right seat with the letter **R**.

Setting outer seat in the transverse direction

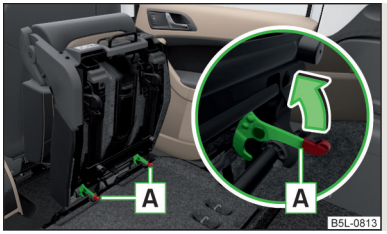

Fig. 74
Locking seats

› Remove the middle seat » page 82, *Unlocking and removing seats*.
› Fold the outer seat forwards » page 81 and unlock » Fig. 73 *on page 82*.
› Move the folded forward and unlocked seat on the guide towards the middle of the vehicle up to the stop.
› Lock the folded forward seat by pressing the seat locks A in the direction of arrow » Fig. 74.

Folding back into the starting position is accomplished in the reverse order.

Fold back seats

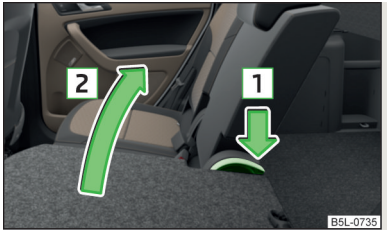

Fig. 75
Folding the seat backrest back into position

› If the seat has been removed, first position it on the guide and lock it in place using seat locking A » Fig. 74 *on page 82* .
› Pull the seat upwards to ensure that the seat is locked correctly.
› Fold the seat in the horizontal position until it audibly click in place.
› Check for yourself that the seat can no longer be lifted by pulling it up.

› Press the lever in direction of arrow 1 » Fig. 75 and fold back the seat backrest in the direction of arrow 2.
› Check for yourself that the seat backrest is engaged by pulling on it.
› Remove the tongue of the lock from the safety position.

WARNING

- After folding back the seat, the seat belts must be ready for use.
- The seat backrests must be securely engaged so that objects from the boot cannot slip into the passenger compartment on sudden braking – risk of injury!
- When folding the seat backrest always make sure that it has safely locked into position, this is confirmed by the position and a visible marking on the cover of the lever.

Transporting and practical equipment

Useful equipment

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

WARNING

- Do not place anything on the dash panel. These objects might slide or fall down when driving (when accelerating, cornering or following a bad manoeuvre) and may distract you from concentrating on the traffic – there is a risk of an accident!
- When driving, ensure that no objects from the centre console or from other storage compartments can get into the driver's footwell. You would not be able to brake, operate the clutch pedal or accelerate - danger of causing an accident!
- No objects should be placed in the storage compartments nor in the drinks holders; the vehicle occupants could be endangered if there is sudden braking or the vehicle collides with something.
- Ash, cigarettes, cigars and the like. may only be placed in the ashtray!

Car park ticket holder

Fig. 76
Parking ticket holder

Read and observe ! on page 84 first.

The parking ticket holder » Fig. 76 is designed e.g. for securing car park tickets.

WARNING

The ticket should always be removed before starting off so that the driver's vision is not impaired.

Storage compartment on the dash panel

Fig. 77
Opening the storage compartment

Read and observe ! on page 84 first.

Opening

› Press the button » Fig. 77.

The cover folds in the arrow direction.

Closing

› Fold back the storage compartment lid in the opposite direction to that of the arrow» Fig. 77 until it clicks.

Certain models do not have a storage compartment lid.

WARNING

- The storage compartment is not a substitute for the ashtray and must also not be used for such purposes – risk of fire!
- The storage compartment must always be closed when driving for safety reasons.
- Do not put any highly inflammable objects or objects which are sensitive to heat (e.g. lighters, sprays, spectacles, etc.) in the storage compartment.

stowage compartments in the doors

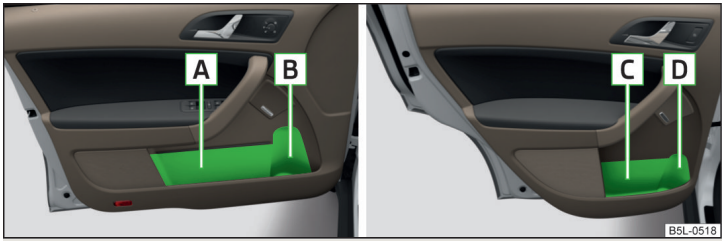

Fig. 78 **Storage compartments: in the front door/in the rear door**

Read and observe ! on page 84 first.

Storage compartments » Fig. 78

A Storage compartment in the front door
B Bottle storage compartment with a capacity of max. 1 l in the front door
C Storage compartment in the rear door
D Bottle storage compartment with a capacity of max. 0.5 l in the rear door

! WARNING

The storage compartment A» Fig. 78 is to be used exclusively for storing objects which do not project out because there is the danger of limiting the operating range of the side airbags.

Storage compartment in the front centre console

Fig. 79
Non-lockable compartment

Read and observe ! on page 84 first.

The storage compartment » Fig. 79can be used to store small items.

! WARNING

The storage compartment is not a substitute for the ashtray and must also not be used for such purposes – risk of fire!

Cup holders

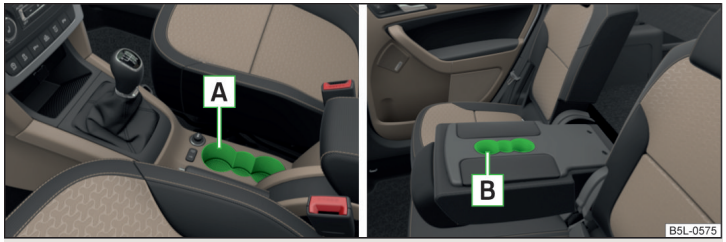

Fig. 80 **Cup holders: in the front centre console / on the folding table in the centre backrest**

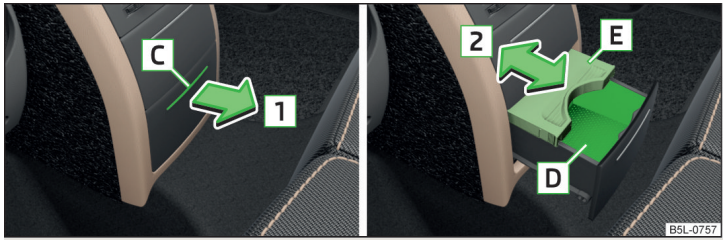

Fig. 81 **Open cup holder in the central console / adjust holder size**

Read and observe ! on page 84 first.

Cup holders » Fig. 80 **and** » Fig. 81

A Cup holder in front centre console
B Cup holder on the folding table

C Location for opening
D Cup holder in rear centre console
E Fuse plate

Open holder in the rear centre console

› Press the holder in area C » Fig. 81.

The holder slides out.

› Pull the holder until it stops in the arrow direction 1.
› Adjust the bracket by sliding the locking plate E in the direction of arrow 2.

Close holder in the rear centre console

› Remove the holder in the opposite direction to the arrow 1 » Fig. 81.

WARNING

- Do not use any cups or beakers which are made of brittle material (e.g. glass, porcelain). This could lead to injuries in the event of an accident.
- Never put hot cups in the cup holders. If the vehicle moves, they may spill – risk of scalding!
- No objects should be placed in the holders that might endanger the vehicle's occupants if the vehicle brakes suddenly or the vehicle is in collision.

CAUTION

- Do not leave open beverage containers in the cup holders during the journey. There is a risk of spilling e.g. when braking which may cause damage to the electrical components or seat upholstery.
- Before folding the rear centre seat, holder D » Fig. 81 must be closed - there is risk of damage.

Note

A 1.5 litre bottle (max. capacity) can be stored in the holder D » Fig. 81.

Cigarette lighter

Fig. 82
Cigarette lighter

Read and observe ! on page 84 first.

Use

› Press the lighter in as far as the stop » Fig. 82.
› Wait until the lighter pops out.
› Remove the glowing lighter and use immediately.
› Place the cigarette lighter back into the socket.

WARNING

- The cigarette lighter also works if the ignition is switched off. When leaving the vehicle, never leave people who are not completely independent, such as children, unattended in the vehicle. These could operate the lighter and get burned, start a fire or damage the interior.
- Take care when using the cigarette lighter! Improper usage can case burns.

Note

The cigarette lighter socket can also be used as a 12 volt socket.

Ashtray

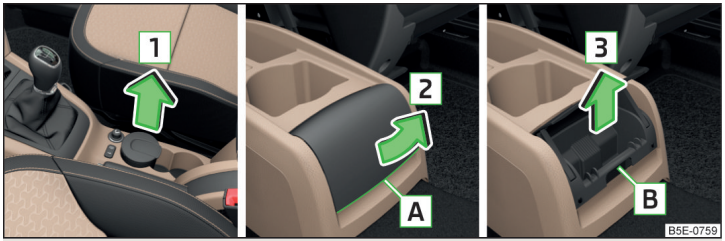

Fig. 83 **Low centre console: Remove front ashtray / open rear ashtray / remove rear ashtray**

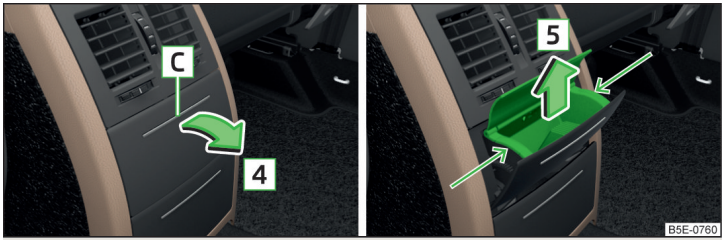

Fig. 84 **High centre console: Open rear ashtray / Removing rear ashtray insert**

Read and observe ! on page 84 first.

The ashtray can be used for discarding ash, cigarettes, cigars and the like » !.

Removing/inserting the front ash tray

› When removing, do not hold the ashtray by its cover.
› Remove the ashtray in the direction of the arrow 1 » Fig. 83.

Insertion takes place in reverse order.

Opening the ashtray on the low centre console

› Grasp the ashtray cover at the lower edge A and fold it open in the direction of arrow 2 » Fig. 83.

Remove the ashtray from the low centre console

› Open the ashtray .
› Grasp the ashtray at the handle B and remove in direction of arrow 3 » Fig. 83.

Removing the ashtray from the low centre console

› Place the ashtray insert into the console and press it in.

Opening the ashtray on the high centre console

› Press in the ashtray in area C » Fig. 84.

The ashtray opens out in the direction of the arrow 4.

Removing the ashtray from the high centre console

› Open the ashtray .
› Press the cover carefully to the stop in the direction of arrow 4 » Fig. 84.
› Grasp the ashtray insert in the area of arrow and remove it in the direction of arrow 5.

Inserting the ashtray into the high centre console

› Place the ashtray insert into the receiver opposite the direction of arrow 5 and press.

! WARNING

Never place hot or flammable objects in the ashtray – risk of fire!

! CAUTION

The ashtray in the higher central console must be closed (otherwise it could get damaged) before folding forward the rear middle seat.

12-Volt power outlet

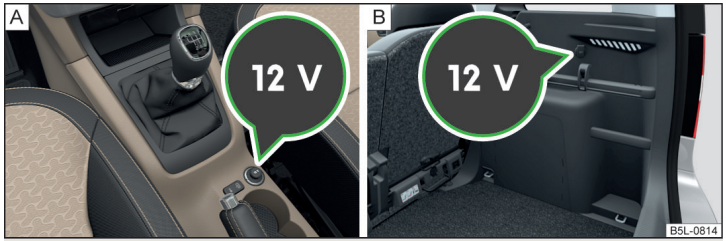

Fig. 85 **Cover for the 12-volt socket: in the front centre console / in the luggage compartment**

Read and observe ! on page 84 first.

Overview of the 12-volt socket » Fig. 85

A In the front centre console

B In the luggage compartment

Use

› Remove the cover on the power socket » Fig. 85 - A or open the cover on the power socket as appropriate » Fig. 85 - B.

› Connect the plug for the electrical appliance to the socket.

! WARNING

Instructions for devices connected to the sockets.

- Safely stow all devices during the journey to prevent them from being thrown around the interior in the event of a sudden braking manoeuvre or an accident – risk of death!
- The devices may warm up during operation – risk of injury or fire! If the device becomes too hot, switch it off immediately and disconnect it from the power supply.

! WARNING

When using the 12-volt sockets, the following notes are to be observed.

- The socket also works if the ignition is switched off. When leaving the vehicle, never leave persons who are not completely independent, such as children, unattended in the vehicle.
- Improper use of the power sockets and the electrical accessories can cause fires, burns and other serious injuries.

! CAUTION

- The socket can only be used for the connection of approved electrical accessories with a total power consumption of up to 120 watts, otherwise the electrical system of the vehicle may be damaged.
- Connecting appliances when the engine is not running will drain the battery of the vehicle!
- Switch off the devices connected to the power sockets before you switch the ignition on or off and before starting the engine, to avoid damage from voltage fluctuations.

Waste container

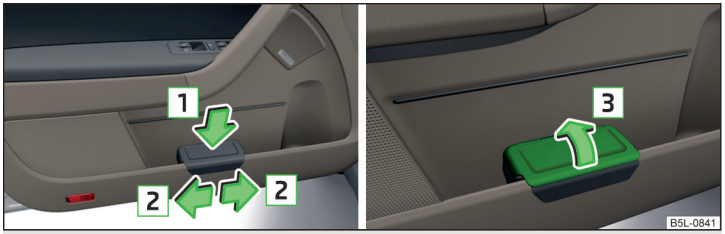

Fig. 86 **Waste container: inserting and moving/opening**

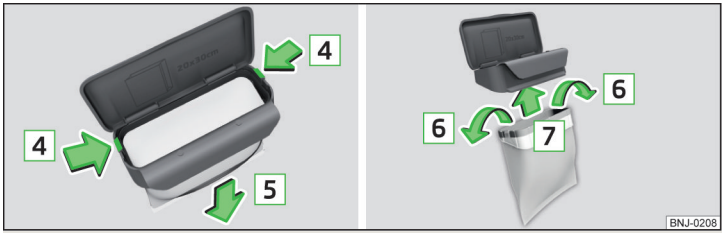

Fig. 87 **Replacing bags**

Read and observe ! on page 84 first.

The waste container can be inserted into the slot in the door.

Insert waste container

› Position the waste container at the front edge of the slot.
› Push the waste container to the back in the direction of the arrow 1 » Fig. 86.
› Move the waste container in the direction of the arrows as required 2.

Remove the waste container

› Remove the waste container in the opposite direction to the arrow 1 » Fig. 86.

Open/close waste container

› Remove the cover in the direction of arrow 3 » Fig. 86.

Closing takes place in reverse order.

Replace bags

› Remove the waste container from the slot.
› Press the two locking lugs on the frame in the direction of arrow 4 » Fig. 87.
› Pull the bag together with the frame down in the direction of arrow 5.
› Remove the bag from the frame.
› Pull the new bag through the frame and pull it over the frame in the direction of arrow 6.
› Place the bag containing the frame in the direction of arrow 7 into the container body, so that the two lugs engage audibly to the frame.

! WARNING

Never use the waste container as an ashtray - risk of fire!

i Note

We recommend that you use 20x30 cm bags.

Multimedia holder

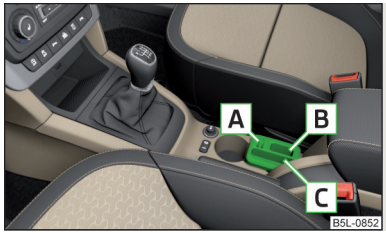

Fig. 88
Multimedia holder

Read and observe ! on page 84 first.

Multimedia holder » Fig. 88

A Storage compartment for storing two coins
B Storage compartment for storing the vehicle key
C Storage compartment for storing a mobile phone

! WARNING

Never use the multimedia holder as an ashtray - risk of fire!

Storage compartment under the front arm rest

Fig. 89 **Open storage compartment / open air supply**

Read and observe ! on page 84 first.

Opening the storage compartment
› Lift the armrest in the direction of arrow A » Fig. 89.

Closing storage compartment
› Open the armrest to the stop, only then can it be folded downwards and against the direction of the arrow A » Fig. 89.

Open the air supply
› Pull the handle in the direction of the arrow B » Fig. 89.

Close air supply
› Push the shutter against the arrow B to the stop » Fig. 89.

When the air inlet is opened, the air flows into the storage compartment with a temperature corresponding to the control dial settings on the A/C unit, depending on the outer climate conditions.

The air inlet in the storage compartment is connected to position through adjustment of the control dial for air distribution. This setting causes the maximum amount of air to flow into the storage compartment (depending on the rotary regulator position for the fan).

Note
If not using the air feed in the storage compartment we recommend that you leave the air supply closed.

storage net in the front centre console

Fig. 90
Storage net

Read and observe ! on page 84 first.

The storage net » Fig. 90 can be used for storage of e.g. maps, magazines etc.

The maximum permissible load of the net is 0.5 kg.

WARNING
Never exceed the maximum permissible load of the net. If heavy objects have not been suitably secured, there is a risk of injury!

CAUTION
Do not place any sharp objects into the net – risk of net damage.

Glasses compartment

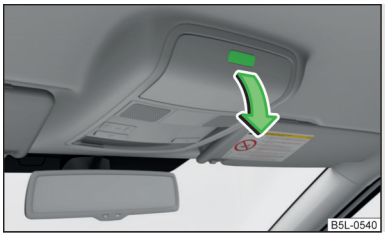

Fig. 91
Opening the glasses storage box

Read and observe ! on page 84 first.

Opening
› Press the button » Fig. 91.

The box folds in the direction of the arrow.

Closing

› Swivel the lid on the storage box against the direction of the arrow» Fig. 91 until it is heard to lock.

WARNING

The compartment must only be opened when removing or inserting the spectacles. Otherwise it must be kept closed.

CAUTION

- Do not put any heat-sensitive objects in the glasses storage box – there is risk of damage at high temperatures.
- The box must be closed before leaving and locking the vehicle – risk of impairment to the functions of the anti-theft alarm system.

Storage compartment on the front passenger side

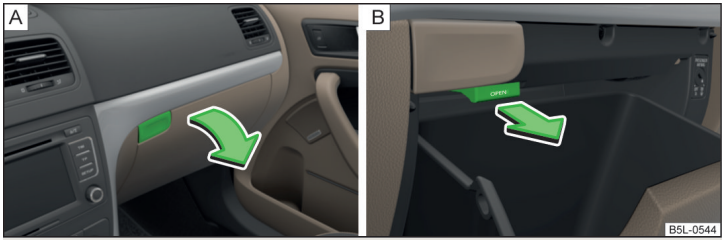

Fig. 92 **Open storage compartment / open air supply**

Read and observe ! on page 84 first.

A pen holder is provided in the stowage compartment.

Opening

› Press the button » Fig. 92 - A.

The cover folds in the arrow direction.

Closing

› Lift the lid upwards until it clicks into place.

Air supply into the storage compartment

› Open the air supply by pulling the lever to the stop in the direction of the arrow » Fig. 92 - B.

› The air supply is closed by the lever being pushed to the stop against the direction of the arrow.

Opening the air supply when the air conditioning system is switched off allows un-cooled air to flow into the storage compartment.

Opening the air supply when the air conditioning system is switched on allows cooled air to flow into the storage compartment.

WARNING

The storage compartment must always be closed when driving for safety reasons.

Note

If not using the air feed in the storage compartment we recommend that you leave the air supply closed.

Storage compartment under the passenger seat

Fig. 93 **Opening the storage compartment**

Read and observe ! on page 84 first.

The maximum permissible load of the storage compartment is 1.5 kg.

Opening

› Pull the handle to position 1 » Fig. 93 in the direction of the arrow.
› Remove the wiper blade in the direction of the arrow 2.

Closing

› Close compartment (opposite to arrow direction) 2» Fig. 93 until you hear it click.

WARNING

The storage compartment must always be closed when driving for safety reasons.

Clothes hook

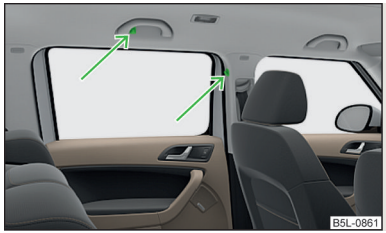

Fig. 94
Clothes hooks

Read and observe ! on page 84 first.

The clothes hooks are located on the middle door pillars of the vehicle and on the handle of the headliner above each of the rear doors » Fig. 94.

The maximum permissible load of each of the hooks is 2 kg.

WARNING

- Do not leave any heavy or sharp-edged objects in the pockets of the items of clothing hung up.
- Do not use hangers to hang up the clothes - there is a risk of limiting the effectiveness of the head airbags.
- Ensure that any clothes hanging from the hooks do not impair your vision to the rear.

Storage pockets on the front seats

Fig. 95
Map pockets

Read and observe ! on page 84 first.

The storage pockets » Fig. 95 are intended for the storage of maps, magazines, etc.

WARNING

Never put heavy items in the map pockets – risk of injury!

CAUTION

Never put large objects into the map pockets, e.g. bottles or objects with sharp edges - risk of damaging the pockets and seat coverings.

Storage compartment in the rear centre console

Fig. 96
Opening the storage compartment

Read and observe ! on page 84 first.

Open/close

› Pull the top edge and open the compartment in the arrow direction » Fig. 96.

Closing takes place in reverse order.

WARNING

The storage compartment is not a substitute for the ashtray and must also not be used for such purposes – risk of fire!

CAUTION

Before folding forward, the rear centre seat storage compartment must be closed - there is a risk of damage to the storage compartment.

Folding table on front seat backrest

Fig. 97
Fold down the folding table

Read and observe ! on page 84 first.

Folding up/folding down

› Fold the table into the horizontal position by pulling in the direction of arrow » Fig. 97.
› Pushing against the direction of the arrow folds the table back into the vertical position.

The maximum permissible load for the table is 10 kg.

WARNING

- The table must not be in the horizontal position while driving - risk of injury.
- Do not put any hot drinks in the cup holder in the folding table. If the vehicle moves, they may spill – risk of scalding!
- Do not use any cups or beakers which are made of brittle material (e.g. glass, porcelain). This could lead to injuries in the event of an accident.

folding table at the centre backrest

Fig. 98
Middle seat backrest already folded forward

Read and observe ! on page 84 first.

The centre seat back can be used after folding forwards » page 81, *Fold seat backrest forwards and fold down seat completely* as an armrest or table » Fig. 98 with cup holders by folding it forwards » Fig. 80 *on page 85*.

CAUTION

If the middle rear seat backrest should be folded forward for lengthy periods, then make sure that the belt locks are not located below it - this can warp the upholstery or fabric.

Removable through-loading bag

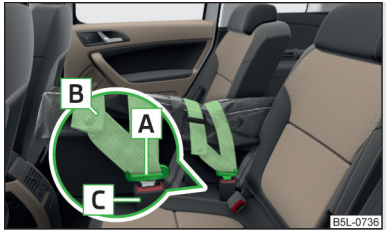

Fig. 99
Securing the removable through-loading bag

Read and observe ! on page 84 first.

The removable through-loading bag (hereinafter referred to as a through-loading bag) is used exclusively for transporting skis.

Stowing through-loading bag and skis

› Open a rear side door of the vehicle.
› Fold the middle seat backrest forward » page 80, *Rear seats*.

› Place the empty through-loading bag in the gap between the front and rear seats in such a way that the end of the bag with the zip lies in the boot.
› Open the boot lid.
› Push the skis into the through-loading bag from the boot » !.
› Close the through-loading bag.

Securing through-loading bag and skis

› Pull the securing belt with both lock tongues out of the pocket of the through-loading bag.
› Insert the lock tongues A » Fig. 99 in the belt locks of the rear middle seat belt C, first on the one side and then on the other side.
› Place the securing belt in the middle of the skis between the heel and the tip of the bindings and pull the securing belt tight at the free end of the belt B.

! WARNING

- After placing the skis into the through-loading bag, you must secure the through-loading bag with the securing belt.
- The securing belt must hold the skis tight.
- Ensure that the securing belt for skis grasps the middle between the tip and the heel element of the binding (see also marking on the through-loading bag).
- The total weight of the skis which are transported must not exceed 10 kg.

! CAUTION

- Never fold and stow the through-loading bag wet - risk of damaging the through-loading bag.
- The through-loading bag is designed for the transportation of a maximum of two pairs of skis.
- Place the skis and sticks in the through-loading bag with the tips facing to the rear.

AUX, USB and MDI inputs

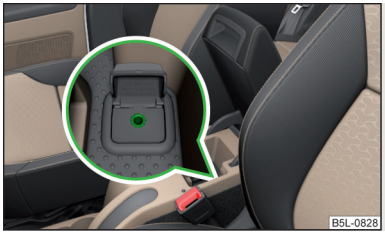

Fig. 100
AUX input under the armrest

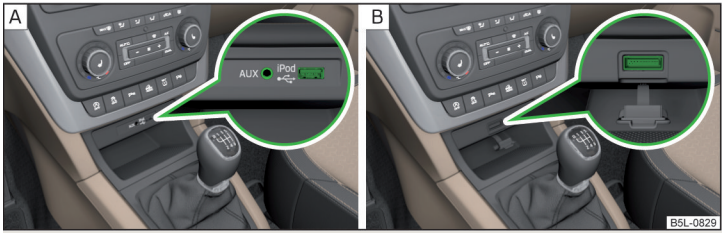

Fig. 101 **Installation locations of the AUX, USB and MDI inputs**

Read and observe ! on page 84 first.

Depending on the equipment, the vehicle may have AUX- USB- or MDI inputs for connecting external sources.

The MDI input is above the storage compartment in the front centre console » Fig. 101 - A and is identified with the labelling **iPod** and by the symbol ⇠.

The MDI input is above the storage compartment in the front centre console » Fig. 101 - B and is identified with the labelling **MEDIA IN** on the covering cap.

The AUX input is marked with the labelling **AUX** and depending on equipment is at the locations listed below.
▸ Under the armrest » Fig. 100.
▸ Above the storage box of the front centre console » Fig. 101 – A.

Additional information» *Owner´s Manual Infotainment*.

Multimedia holder

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

External devices (e.g. tablet, smartphone, etc.) measuring min. 122 mm and max. 195 mm can be secured in the support.

The maximum permissible load of the compartment is 750 g.

CAUTION

Never exceed the maximum permissible load of the holder - there is a risk of damage or functional impairment.

Install/remove

Fig. 102 **Position adapter/install holder**

Fig. 103 **Remove holder/remove adapter**

Read and observe ! on page 95 first.

Fitting

› Attach the opened adapter to the guide rods of the headrest » Fig. 102.
› Clip in the adapter in the direction of arrow 1 » !.
› Clip the holder in the direction of arrow 2 into the adapter.

Removing

› Pull on the locking strap A in the direction of arrow 3 » Fig. 103.
› Remove the holder from the bracket in the direction of arrow 4.
› Press the adapter and remove from the guide rods of the headrest in the direction of arrow 5.

WARNING

Carefully clip in the adapter - there is a risk of injuring your finger.

Handle holder

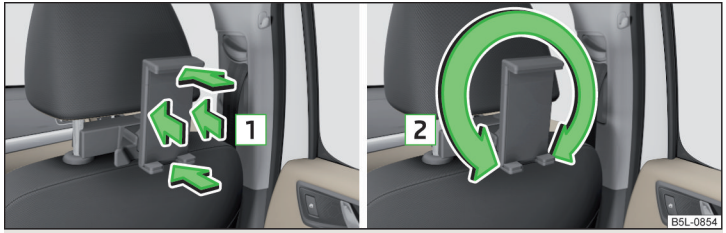

Fig. 104 **Tilt and rotate holder**

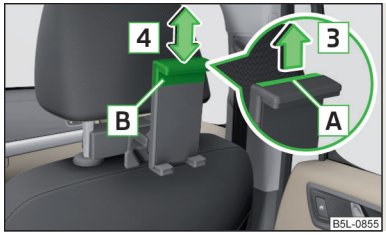

Fig. 105
Adjust holder size

Read and observe ! on page 95 first.

Tilt and rotate holder
The holder may be tilted 30° in the direction of arrow 1 and rotated through 360° in the direction of arrow 2 » Fig. 104.

Adjust holder size
› Pull out the securing tab A in the direction of arrow 3 and move part B in direction of arrow 4 to the desired position » Fig. 105.

Luggage compartment and transport of cargo

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

When transporting cargo, the following instructions must be adhered to
- When transporting heavy objects, the driving characteristics change due to the shift in the centre of gravity. The speed and style of driving must be adjusted accordingly.
- The cargo should be stowed in the luggage compartment. To prevent it from moving, it should be secured with suitable lashing straps to the lashing eyes or secured with fixing nets.
- Distribute loads as evenly as possible.
- Place heavy objects as far forward as possible.
- The transported items must be stowed in such a way that no objects are able to slip forward on sudden driving or braking manoeuvres – risk of injury!
- Tyre pressure should be adjusted for the load.
- When transporting loads in the luggage compartment that has been enlarged by folding one of the rear seats forward, care should be taken to ensure the safety of passengers transported on the other rear seat.

In the event of an accident, even small and light objects gain so much kinetic energy that they can cause severe injuries.

The magnitude of the kinetic energy is dependent on the speed at which the vehicle is travelling and the weight of the object.

Example: In the event of a frontal collision at a speed of 50 km/h, an object with a weight of 4.5 kg produces an energy, which corresponds to 20 times its own weight. This means that it results in a weight of approx. 90 kg " ".

! WARNING
- Never exceed the maximum permissible load of the respective fasteners, nets, hooks, etc., as heavy objects are not sufficiently secured - there is a risk of injury!
- If the cargo is tied down with unsuitable or damaged lashing straps, injuries can occur in the event of braking manoeuvres or accidents.
- Loose cargo can be thrown forward during a sudden manoeuvre or in the event of an accident and can injure the occupants or other road users.
- Loose cargo could hit a deployed airbag and injure occupants – danger of death!

! CAUTION
- Never exceed the maximum permissible load of the respective fasteners, nets, hooks, etc. - these could be damaged.
- Please ensure that the heating elements for the rear window heater are not damaged as a result of abrasive objects.

Fastening elements

Fig. 106 **Fasteners: Version 1/version 2**

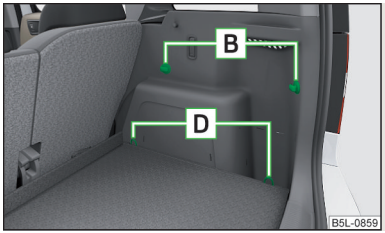

Fig. 107
Fasteners: variant 3

Read and observe ! and ! on page 96 first.

Overview of the fastening elements » Fig. 106 **and** » Fig. 107

A Lashing eyes for securing items of luggage, fastening nets and multifunction pocket

B Fasteners for securing fastening nets and multifunction pocket

C Fastening strip with integrated hook for attaching fastening nets and multifunction pocket

D Lashing eyes for securing fastening nets

The maximum permissible load of the individual lashing eyes A is 350 kg.

The maximum permissible load of the individual lashing eyes D is 150 kg.

Fixing nets

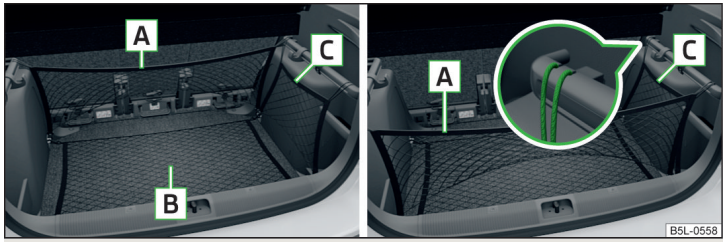

Fig. 108 **Fastening examples for nets**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 96 first.

Fastening examples for nets » Fig. 108

A Horizontal pocket

B Floor net

C Vertical pocket

The maximum permissible load of each of the nets is 1.5 kg.

! CAUTION

Do not place any sharp objects in the nets – risk of net damage.

Multifunction pocket

Fig. 109 **Securing the multifunction pocket**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 96 first.

The pocket » Fig. 109can be secured to the fastening elements A, B and C » Fig. 106 *on page 97*.

The maximum permissible load for the bag attached to the fastening element is 3 kg.

! CAUTION

In vehicles with a variable loading floor, it is not possible to attach the bag to the fastening elements.

Foldable hook

Fig. 110
Fold down hooks

Read and observe ! and ! on page 96 first.

One foldable hook for attaching small items of luggage, such as bags etc., is provided on each side of the luggage compartment.

The maximum permissible load for the hook is 7.5 kg.

› Press on the lower portion of the hook A and then fold it in direction of the arrow » Fig. 110.

Fastening bar with sliding hook

Fig. 111 **Sliding hook on the mounting bar / removing hook**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 96 first.

A fastening bar is located on both sides of the luggage compartment with two moveable hooks each, in order to attach small items of luggage, such as bags, etc.

The maximum permissible load for the hook is 7.5 kg.

Moving the hook

› Fold up the hook in direction of arrow 1 » Fig. 111 until an angle of approx. 45° is reached.
› Move the hook in the direction of the arrow 2 into the desired position and fold down the hook as far as the stop in direction of arrow 3.

Removing the hook

The hook can be removed only in the rear region of the attachment bar.

› Fold the hook in the direction of the arrow 4 » Fig. 111 until it slackens.
› Remove the hook in the direction of the arrow 5.

Installing the hook

› Position the hook on the fastening strip in a vertical position in direction of arrow 5 » Fig. 111 and lightly press it on.
› Fold the hook down in the opposite direction of the arrow 4 until it locks fully.

Flexible storage compartment

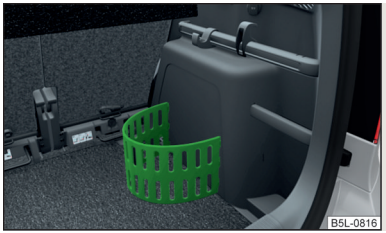

Fig. 112
Flexible storage compartment

Read and observe ! and ! on page 96 first.

The flexible storage compartment can be installed on the right-hand side of the boot » Fig. 112.

The storage compartment is designed for storing small objects with a maximum total weight of 8 kg.

Fitting
› Place both ends of the storage compartment into the openings on the right side panel of the luggage compartment.
› Push the storage compartment down to lock it.

Removing
› Grasp the storage compartment on the two upper corners.
› Press the upper corners inwards and release the storage compartment by pulling upwards.
› Remove the storage compartment by pulling towards you.

! CAUTION
The flexible storage compartment cannot be installed on vehicles with the variable loading floor.

Floor covering on both sides

Read and observe ! and ! on page 96 first.

You can fit a double-sided floor covering in the luggage compartment.

One side of the double-sided floor covering is made of fabric, the other side is washable (easy to maintain).

The washable side is used to transport wet or dirty items.

i Note
For easier turning of the covering, use the loop attached.

Luggage compartment cover

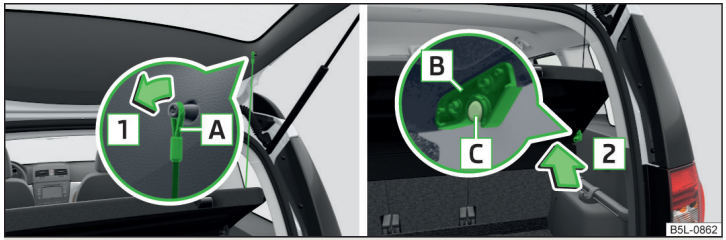

Fig. 113 **Remove the luggage compartment cover**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 96 first.

If the support straps A » Fig. 113 are attached to the boot lid, then opening the lid will raise the boot lid cover (hereafter referred to as cover).

The boot cover can be removed if you want to transport bulky goods.

Removing
› Fold the seat backrests forward a little to make it easier to remove the luggage compartment cover » page 81, *inclination of the seat backrest*.
› On both sides of the boot lid, unhook the straps A in the direction of arrow 1 » Fig. 113.
› Place the cover in the horizontal position.
› Press on the two sides to the underside of the cover in the region of the studs C in the direction of arrow 2.
› Fold the slackened front part of the boot cover over the head restraints of the rear seats.
› Slightly tilt the boot cover and remove it to the rear.

Fitting
› Place the cover on the contact surfaces of the side trim panel.
› Position the mounts on the cover B onto the side trim panel via pins C » Fig. 113.
› Press on the two sides to the upper side of the cover in the region of the studs C.

The fixture B must lock into place of the studs C on both sides of the luggage compartment.

› Unhook the straps A on both sides of the boot lid.

WARNING

No objects should be placed on the cover. This could endanger the vehicle occupants during sudden braking or vehicle impact.

CAUTION

After removing the cover, store it in such a way that it cannot be damaged or soiled.

Net partition

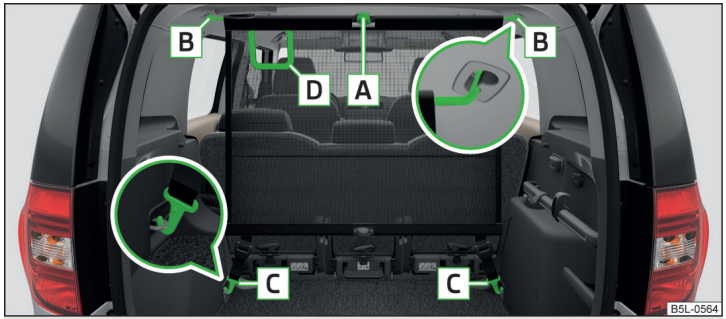

Fig. 114 **Using the net partition behind the rear seats**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 96 first.

The net partition can either be installed behind the rear seats or behind the front seats.

Install behind the rear seats

› Remove the luggage compartment cover » page 99, *Luggage compartment cover*.
› Remove the net partition from the bag.
› Unfold both parts of the cross rod until they are heard to engage.
› First insert the rod into the mount B » Fig. 114 on one side and push it forwards. In the same way, insert the cross rod into the mount B on the other side of the vehicle.
› Hang the carabines C at the belt ends into the lashing eyes behind the rear seats.
› Pull the belts through the tensioning clasp.

Remove from behind the rear seats

› Undo the belts on both sides and unhook the carabiners C » Fig. 114.
› Push the cross rod first of all on the one side and then on the other side towards the rear.
› Remove the cross rod from the mounts B.

Merge

› Press the red button of the joint A » Fig. 114.

The joint is undone.

› Put the net partition folded together in the bag and close it.
› Attach the bag with the aid of the plastic carabines to the eyes on the left and right boot trim panel.

Installing and removing the net partition behind the rear seats with variable loading floor is carried out in the same way as behind the rear seats without variable loading floor. Use the lower fixing eyelets on the carrier rails in order to attach the carabines.

Installing and removing the net partition behind the rear seats is carried out in the same way as behind the rear seats. Use the fixing eyelets on the rear of the front seats to attach the carabines. To enlarge the boot, the rear seats can be removed » page 82.

The opening D » Fig. 114 in the net partition is for passing the three-point seat belt » page 13 through.

Storage compartments

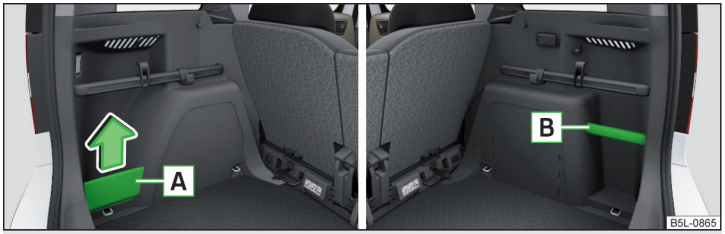

Fig. 115 **Storage compartment on the left / right**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 96 first.

The cover for the storage compartment A » Fig. 115 can be removed, thus enlarging the boot.

› Grasp the top part of the cover A and carefully remove it in the direction of the arrow.

The removable storage compartment A » Fig. 115 on the left side is suitable for stowing small objects weighing up to 1.5 kg.

The storage compartment B is designed for storing small objects of up to 0.5 kg. in weight in total.

Removable storage box

Fig. 116
Storage box

Read and observe ! and ! on page 96 first.

The storage box » Fig. 116 is placed under the variable loading floor and can be taken out.

There is a storage space for the vehicle tool kit under the storage box » page 182, *Vehicle tool kit*.

! WARNING

The removable storage box must be located under the variable loading floor for the safe use of the variable loading floor.

Removable light

Fig. 117 **Light operation / removal**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 96 first.

The removable lamp (hereinafter referred to as a lamp) is located on the right side of the luggage compartment.

The lamp is for the illumination of the luggage compartment or it can be used as a portable lamp.

The lamp is fitted with magnets. Thus after taking these out of the vehicle they can for example be connected to the car body.

Description of the lamp » Fig. 117

A Part that lights up when the lamp is not in the mount
B Part that lights up when the lamp is in the mount
C Button for operating the lamp

Lamp placed in the mount
The warning light **turns on** when tailgate is opened.

The warning light **turns off** when the tailgate is closed.

Removed from the holder

› Grasp the lamp in the areas of the arrow D » Fig. 117 and swivel it in the direction of the arrow 1.

Use of removed light

› Press the button C » Fig. 117 - the lamp lights up.
› Press C button once again - the light goes out.

Reinserting the lamp the holder

› Switch off the ignition » !.
› First of all, place the deactivated light in the holder on the side facing the boot lid and then press on the light from the other side until it is clicks into place.

Lamp charges

The lamp is supplied by three rechargeable type NiMH AAA batteries.

The rechargeable batteries are constantly charged when the engine is running. It takes approx. 3 hours to fully charge the rechargeable batteries.

Replace batteries » page 193.

! CAUTION

- If the lamp is not switched off and correctly inserted in the holder, the LEDs in the front part A » Fig. 117 of the lamp are automatically switched off.
- If the lamp is not correctly inserted into the holder, this does not light up when the boot lid is opened and the rechargeable batteries are not charged.
- The lamp is not watertight and must therefore be protected against moisture.

Class N1 vehicles

Read and observe ! and ! on page 96 first.

On class N1 vehicles, which are not fitted with a protective grille, a lashing set which complies with the standard EN 12195 (1 - 4) must be used for fastening the load.

Proper functioning of the electrical installation is essential for safe vehicle operation. It is important to ensure that the electrical installation is not damaged during the adjustment process or when the storage area is being loaded and unloaded.

Variable loading floor in the luggage compartment (Estate)

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

The maximum permissible load of the variable loading floor is 75 kg.

The variable loading floor makes it easier to handle bulky goods and creates an even boot floor when the rear seat backrests are folded forward.

Removing and inserting the variable loading floor

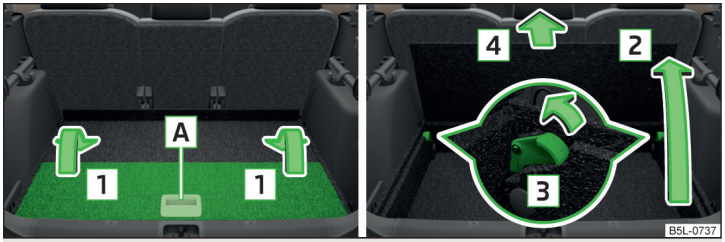

Fig. 118 **Fold up / removal variable loading floor**

› Fold the variable loading floor together using the handle A and fold in the direction of 1 » Fig. 118.
› Fold up the variable loading floor in direction of arrow 2.
› Pull on both sides of the locking levers in direction of arrow 3.
› Remove the variable loading floor in direction of arrow 4.

Insertion takes place in reverse order.

Securing the loading floor in the raised position

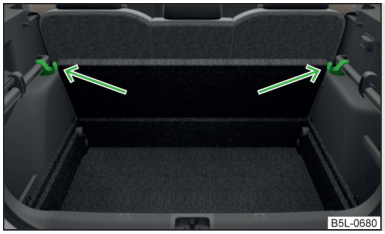

Fig. 119
Secured loading floor in the raised position

› Fold up the hooks on the fastening strip in direction of arrow 1 » Fig. 111 *on page 98*.
› Fold up the variable loading floor behind the rear back backrests.
› Fold down the hooks in direction of arrow 3 » Fig. 111 *on page 98* as far as the stop.
› Support the variable loading floor on the hooks folded downwards » Fig. 119.

Removing and refitting carrier rails

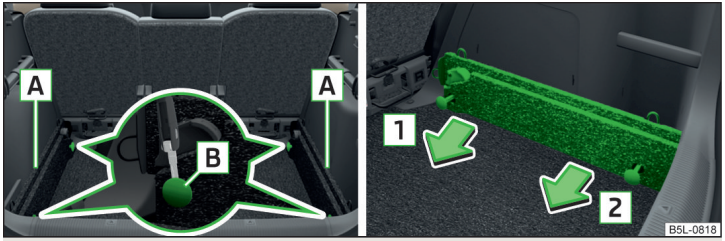

Fig. 120 **Slacken check points/remove carrier rails**

Removing

› Undo the securing points B » Fig. 120 on the carrier rails using the vehicle key or a flat screwdriver.
› Hold the carrier rail A in the front area and remove by pulling in the direction of arrow 1.
› Hold the carrier rail A in the rear area and loosen and remove by pulling in the direction of arrow 2.

Fitting

› Position the carrier rails on the sides of the boot.
› Press the two securing points B » Fig. 120 on each carrier rail to the stop.
› Check the attachment of the carrier rails by pulling it.

! WARNING

Pay attention when installing the variable loading floor that the carrier rails and the variable loading floor are correctly fixed, otherwise the occupants are at risk.

Using the variable loading floor with a spare wheel

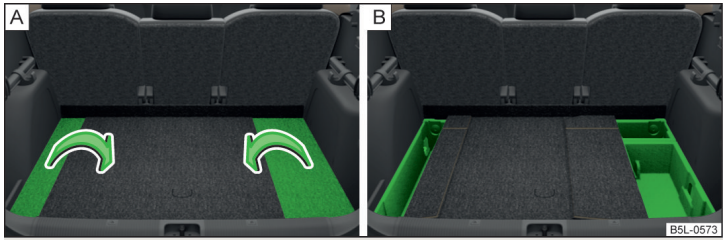

Fig. 121 **Fold up the side panels of the variable loading floor / space under the variable loading floor**

The sides of the variable loading floor can be folded in the direction of arrow » Fig. 121 - A.

The room under the variable loading floor » Fig. 121 - B can be used to stow objects.

Roof rack

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

WARNING

When transporting cargo, the following instructions must be adhered to.
- The transported items on the roof rack must always be securely attached – risk of accident!
- Always secure the load with appropriate and undamaged lashing straps or tensioning straps.
- Distribute the load evenly over the roof rack system.
- When transporting heavy objects or objects which take up a large area on the roof rack system, the handling of the car may change as a result of the displacement of the centre of gravity. The style of driving and speed must therefore be adapted to the current circumstances.
- Avoid abrupt and sudden driving/braking manoeuvres.
- The permissible roof load, permissible axle loads and permissible total vehicle weight must not be exceeded under any circumstances – risk of accident!

CAUTION

- On vehicles with a panoramic sunroof, make sure that the panorama roof does not strike any items which are transported when it is tilted.
- Ensure that the boot lid does not hit the roof load when opened.

Note

We recommend that you use a roof rack from ŠKODA Original Accessories.

Roof load

Read and observe ! and ! on page 104 first.

Do not exceed the permissible roof load of **100 kg** – this includes the carrier system.

The full permissible roof load cannot be used if a roof rack system with a lower load carrying capacity is used. The maximum capacity of the carrier system should never be exceeded.

Heating and ventilation

Heating, manual air conditioning system, Climatronic

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

The heating and air conditioning ventilate and heat the vehicle interior. The air conditioning system also cools and dehumidifies the vehicle interior.

The heating effect is dependent upon the coolant temperature, thus full heat output only occurs when the engine has reached its operating temperature.

The cooling system only operates if the following conditions are met:
- ✓ The cooling system is switched on.
- ✓ The engine is running.
- ✓ The outside temperature is above approx. +2 °C.
- ✓ The blower is switched on.

If the cooling system is switched on, the temperature and air humidity drops in the vehicle. The cooling system prevents the windows from misting up during the cold season of the year.

It is possible to briefly activate recirculated air mode to enhance the cooling effect » page 107.

Health protection

To reduce health risks (e.g. common colds), the following instructions for the use of the cooling system are to be observed.
- ▸ The difference between the indoor temperature and the outdoor air temperature should not be greater than about 5 ° C.
- ▸ The cooling system is to be turned off about 10 minutes before the end of the journey.
- ▸ Once a year, have the manual air conditioner or the Climatronic disinfected by a specialist company.

WARNING

- For your own safety and that of other road users, ensure that all the windows are free of ice, snow and misting. The blower should always be on to prevent the windows from misting up.
- Under certain circumstances, air at a temperature of about 5 °C can flow out of the vents when the cooling system is switched on.

CAUTION

- The air inlet in front of the windscreen must be free of e.g. ice, snow or leaves to ensure that the heating and cooling system operates properly.
- After switching on the cooling **Condensation** from the evaporator of the air conditioning may drip down and form a puddle below the vehicle. This is not a leak!
- If the coolant temperature is too high, the cooling system is switched off to ensure that the engine cools down.

Heating and manual air conditioning

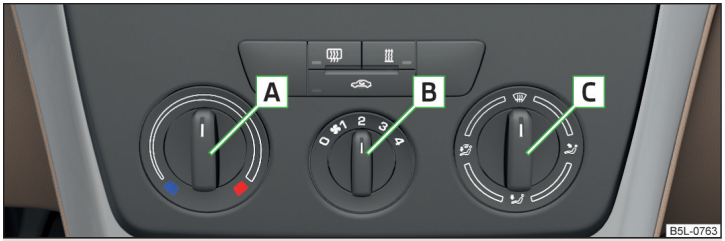

Fig. 122 **Heating Controls**

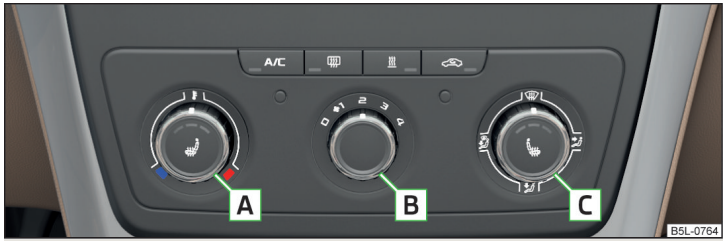

Fig. 123 **Controls of the manual air conditioning**

Read and observe and on page 105 first.

Individual functions can be set or switched on by turning the dial or pressing the corresponding button. When the function is activated, a warning light illuminates in the button.

Functions of the individual control elements » Fig. 122 **and** » Fig. 123

A Set the temperature
- Lower the temperature
- Increase the temperature

B Set the fan speed (stage 0: fan off, level 4: high speed)

C Set the direction of the air outlet » page 108
- Air flow to the windows
- Air flow to the upper body
- Air flow to the footwell
- Air flow to the windows and the footwell

A/C Switching the cooling system on/off

Switching the rear window heater on/off » page 70

Switch the aux. heating and ventilation on/off » page 110

Switch the recirculation on/off » page 107

Control the seat heater on the front left seat » page 78

Control the seat heater on the front right seat » page 78

Information on cooling system

The cooling system operates only if the following conditions are met » page 104.

The warning light in the button **A/C** » Fig. 123 illuminates after activation, even if not all of the conditions for the function of the cooling system have been met. By lighting up of the indicator light in the button, the operational readiness of the cooling system is signalled.

Note

During operation of the manual air conditioning, an increase in engine idle speed may occur under certain circumstances in order to ensure sufficient heating comfort.

Climatronic (automatic air conditioning)

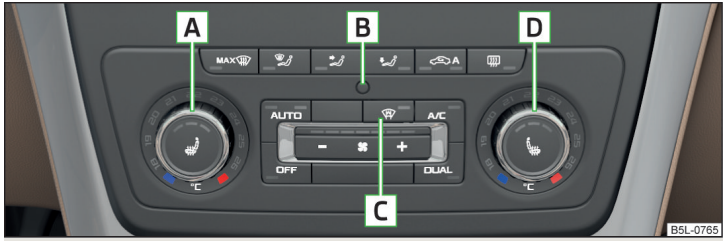

Fig. 124 **Controls the Climatronic**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 105 first.

The Climatronic in **automatic mode** ensures the best-possible setting of the temperature of the out-flowing air, the blower stage and air distribution.

Individual functions can be set or switched on by turning the dial or pressing the corresponding button. When the function is activated, a warning light illuminates in the button.

Functions of the individual controls » Fig. 124

A Adjust the temperature for the left side or for both sides
- Lower the temperature
- Increase the temperature

B Interior temperature sensor

C Depending on equipment fitted:
- Switching the windscreen heater on/off » page 70
- Switch the aux. heating and ventilation on/off » page 110

D Adjust the temperature for the right side
- Lower the temperature
- Increase the temperature

Control the seat heater on the front left seat » page 78

Control the seat heater on the front right seat » page 78

Adjust the blower speed
- + Increase speed
- - Reduce speed

MAX Switch the intensive windscreen heater on/off

Air flow to the windows

Air flow to the upper body

Air flow in the footwell

Switch the automatic recirculation on/off » page 107

Switch the rear window heater on/off » page 70

AUTO Switching automatic mode on

OFF Switch the Climatronic system off » !

A/C Switching the cooling system on/off

DUAL Switch the temperature setting in Dual mode on/off

After the cooling system is switched off, only the ventilation function remains active whereby the minimum temperature that can be reached is the outside temperature.

Setting temperature

The interior temperature for the left and right side can be set separately or together.

The temperature **for both sides,** is set by turning the knob A » Fig. 124 (the indicator light in the button **DUAL** is not illuminated).

The temperature **for the right side** is adjusted by turning the knob D (the indicator light in the button **DUAL** is lit).

The temperature **for the left side** is adjusted by turning the knob A (the indicator light in the button **DUAL** is lit).

The temperature can be set between +18 °C and +26 °C. The temperature is regulated automatically within this range.

If the symbol illuminates at the beginning of the numeric scale then the Climatronic works with **maximum cooling** (temperature setting below +18 °C).

If the symbol illuminates at the end of the numeric scale then the Climatronic works with **maximum heating** (temperature setting above +26 °C).

There is no automatic temperature control in the two end positions.

Controlling blower
The Climatronic system controls the blower stages automatically in line with the interior temperature. However, the blower stages can be manually adapted to suit your particular needs.

If the blower speed is reduced to a minimum, Climatronic is switched off.

The set blower speed is displayed above the symbol button when the respective number of indicator lights come on.

WARNING
- Do not switch off the Climatronic system for longer than necessary.
- Switch on the Climatronic system as soon as the windows mist up.

CAUTION
Do not cover the interior temperature sensor B » Fig. 124 as this could impair the functioning of the Climatronic.

Note
- If the windscreen mists up, press the symbol button MAX. Press the button **AUTO** once the windscreen has demisted.
- During operation of the Climatronic, an increase in engine idle speed can occur under certain circumstances in order to ensure adequate heating comfort.

Climatronic - automatic operation

Read and observe and on page 105 first.

The automatic mode is used in order to maintain a constant temperature and to demist the windows in the interior of the car.

If the warning light in the top right corner of the button **AUTO** lights up, the Climatronic operates in "HIGH"-mode.

Upon pressing the **AUTO** button again, the Climatronic switches to "LOW"-mode and the indicator light in the top left corner lights up. The Climatronic uses only in this mode the lower blower speed. However taking into account the noise level, this is more comfortable, yet be aware that the effectiveness of the air conditioning system is reduced particularly if the vehicle is fully occupied.

By pressing the button **AUTO** again, it is changed to "HIGH"-mode.

Automatic mode can be **switched off** by pressing one of the buttons for the air distribution or by increasing/decreasing the blower speed. The temperature regulation is continued.

Note
Climatronic is set to the "HIGH" mode at the factory.

Air distribution control

Read and observe and on page 105 first.

The recirculation mode prevents contaminated outside air getting into the interior of the vehicle.

In recirculated air mode air is sucked out of the interior of the vehicle and then fed back into the interior.

Heating and manual air conditioning system
› To turn the recirculation mode **on or off,** press the Symbol key .

The air recirculation mode is automatically turned off by turning the air distribution control C to position » Fig. 122 *on page 105* or » Fig. 123 *on page 105*.

Recirculated air mode can be switched on again from this position by repeatedly pressing the symbol button .

Climatronic (automatic air conditioning)
› To **turn the recirculation mode on,** press the Symbol key A repeatedly until the indicator light is lit on the **left** side of the button.
› **To activate the automatic recirculation mode,** press the Symbol key A repeatedly until the indicator light is lit on the **right** side of the button.

Climatronic has an air quality sensor for the detection of the pollutant concentration in the sucked-in air.

If a considerable increase in concentration of pollutants is recognised by the air quality sensor, recirculated air mode will temporarily be switched on.

If the concentration of pollutants decreases to the normal level, the air distribution control is automatically switched off so that fresh air can be guided into the vehicle interior.

If the air quality sensor does not automatically switch on the recirculated air mode in the event of an unpleasant odour, you can switch it on yourself by pressing the button . The indicator light lights up in the button on the left side.

To **turn off the air recirculation** or **to deactivate the automatic air recirculation**, press the **AUTO** button of press the symbol button repeatedly until the warning lights in the button go out.

WARNING

The recirculation system cannot be switched on for a longer period of time, because there is no supply of fresh air from the outside. "Stale air" may result in fatigue in the driver and occupants, reduce attention levels and also cause the windows to mist up. The risk of having an accident increases. Switch off recirculated air mode as soon as the windows start to mist up.

CAUTION

We recommend not smoking in the vehicle when the recirculating air operation is switched on. The smoke sucked from inside the vehicle is deposited on the evaporator of the air conditioner. This produces a permanent odour when the air conditioning system is operating which can only be eliminated through considerable effort and expense (replacement of compressor).

Note

The automatic air distribution control operates only if the outside temperature is higher than approx. 2 °C.

Air outlet vents

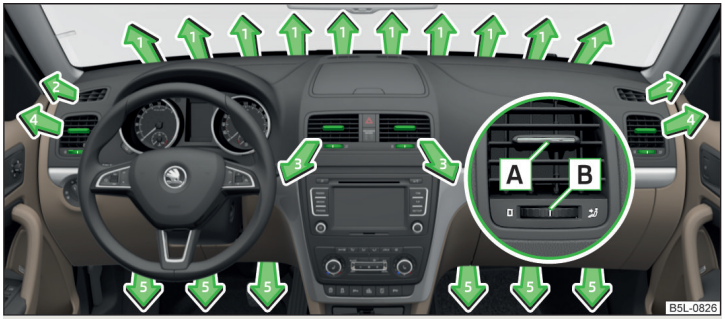

Fig. 125 **Air vents at the front**

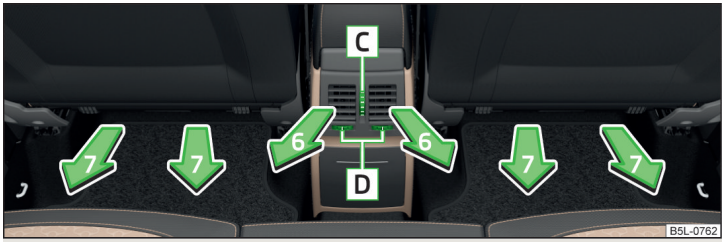

Fig. 126 **Air vents at the rear**

Read and observe and on page 105 first.

The direction of airflow can be adjusted using the air outlet vents **3**, **4** » Fig. 125 and **6** » Fig. 126 – the outlets can be opened and closed individually.

Open the air outlet vents 3 and 4

› Turn the knob B to the position » Fig. 125.

Close air outlet vents 3 and 4

› Turn the knob B to the **0** » Fig. 125.

Open the air outlet vents 6

› Turn the knob C between the end positions » Fig. 126.

Close air outlet vents 6

› Turn the knob C to the end position » Fig. 126.

Change air flow of air outlet vents 3 and 4

› To change the height of the air flow, swivel the horizontal fins with the movable adjuster elements A upward or downward » Fig. 125.

› To adjust the lateral direction of the air flow, turn the vertical fins with the movable adjuster element A to the left or to the right.

Change air flow of air outlet vents 6

› To change the height of the air flow, swivel the horizontal fins with the vertical adjuster elements C upward or downward » Fig. 126.

› To adjust the lateral direction of the air flow, turn the vertical fins with the horizontal movable adjuster element D to the left or to the right.

An overview of the available settings for adjusting the direction of the air outlet

Set the direction of the air outlet	Active air outlet nozzles » Fig. 125 and » Fig. 126
	1. 2. 4
	1. 2. 4. 5. 7
	3. 4. 6
	4. 5. 7

CAUTION

To ensure that the heating, the manual air conditioning and the Climatronic systems work properly, do not block up the air outlet vents with any objects.

Note

The air outlet vents **6** » Fig. 126 are only fitted on vehicles with the higher centre console.

Auxiliary heating (auxiliary heating and ventilation)

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Functional requirements of the auxiliary heating (aux. heating and ventilation)

✓ The charge state of the vehicle battery is sufficient.

✓ The fuel supply is adequate (the warning light is not illuminated in the instrument cluster).

Aux. heating

The auxiliary heating can be used when both when stationary, when the engine is switched off, to preheat the vehicle and also while driving (e.g. during the heating phase of the engine).

The auxiliary heating warms up the coolant by combusting fuel from the vehicle tank. This heats the air flowing into the passenger compartment (if the blower is turned on).

The auxiliary heating also warms up the engine.

The heater is switched on or off **automatically** depending on the ambient conditions to give the best possible conditions for the engine running and the interior heating.

For vehicles with gasoline engines, the automatic switching on and off of the heater can be disabled in a specialist workshop.

Auxiliary ventilation

The auxiliary ventilation enables fresh air to flow into the vehicle interior by switching off the engine, whereby the interior temperature is effectively decreased (e.g. with the vehicle parked in the sun).

WARNING

- The auxiliary heating (auxiliary heating and ventilation) (hereinafter referred to as aux. heating) must never be operated in closed rooms (e.g. garages) – risk of poisoning!
- The auxiliary heating must not be allowed to run during refuelling – risk of fire.
- The exhaust pipe of the auxiliary heating is located on the underside of the vehicle. If you want to use the heater, do not switch off the car in places where the exhaust fumes can come into contact with flammable materials such as dry grass, undergrowth, leaves, spilled fuel etc. -. risk of fire.

CAUTION

- The exhaust pipe of the auxiliary heating, which is located on the underside of the vehicle, must not be clogged and the exhaust flow must not be blocked.
- If the auxiliary heating is running, the vehicle battery discharges. If the auxiliary heating and ventilation has been operated several times over a longer period, the vehicle must be driven a few kilometres in order to recharge the vehicle battery.
- The air inlet in front of the windscreen must be free (e.g. of ice, snow or leaves) to ensure that the auxiliary heating operates properly.

Note

- The auxiliary heating only switches the blower on, if it has achieved a coolant temperature of approx. 50 °C.
- At low outside temperatures, this can result in a formation of water vapour in the area of the engine compartment. This is quite normal and is not an operating problem.
- So that warm air can flow into the vehicle interior after switching on the aux. heating, you must maintain the comfort temperature normally selected by you, leave the fan switched on and leave the air outlet vents in open. It is recommended to put the air flow in the position or .

Switching on and off directly

Fig. 127 **Button for switching on/off the system directly on the operating part of the air conditioning/Climatronic**

Read and observe and on page 110 first.

The aux. heating can be **directly** switched on or off at any time using the symbol key » Fig. 127 on the operating part of the air-conditioning system, or the Climatronic or via the radio remote control » page 111.

If the auxiliary heating has not already been switched off, it switches off automatically after the running time set in the **Running time** menu.

After switching off the auxiliary heating, the coolant pump still runs for a short period.

System settings

Read and observe and on page 110 first.

The following menu items can be selected from the **Aux. heating** menu item in the MAXI DOT display (depending on the vehicle equipment).

- **Day of the wk.** - set the current day of the week
- **Running time** - Set the required running time in 5 minute increments. The running time can be 10 to 60 minutes.
- **Mode** - Set the desired heating/ventilation mode
- **Starting time 1**, **Starting time 2**, **Starting time 3** - for each pre-set time, the day and the time (hour and minute) can be set for switching on the auxiliary heating. An empty position can be found between Sunday and Monday when selecting the day. If this empty position is selected, the activation is performed without taking into account the day.
- **Activate** - Activate pre-set mode

- **Deactivate** - Deactivate pre-set mode
- **Factory setting.** - Restore factory setting
- **Back** - return to main menu.

Only one programmed pre-set time can be active.

The last programmed pre-set time remains active.

After the auxiliary heating activates at the set time, it is necessary to pre-set a time again.

If the pre-set menu is closed by selecting the **Back** menu item or if no changes are made on the display for more than 10 seconds, the set values are stored, but the pre-set time is not activated.

An indicator light on the button is illuminated when the system is running.

The running system deactivates after expiration of the operating period or can be deactivated earlier by pressing the button to directly switch on/off the auxiliary heating or by using the radio remote control.

Radio remote control

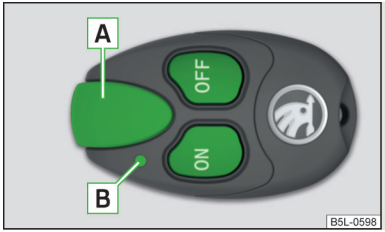

Fig. 128
Radio remote control

Read and observe and on page 110 first.

Using the radio remote control, the aux. heating and ventilation (hereinafter referred to as heater) can be switched on or off.

Function and description of the radio remote control » Fig. 128

A Aerial
B Warning light
ON Switch on the auxiliary heating
OFF Switch off the auxiliary heating

To switch the auxiliary heating on or off, hold the remote control vertically, with the aerial A » Fig. 128 pointing upwards. The antenna must not be covered with the fingers or the palm of the hand during this process.

The auxiliary heating can only be switched on/off safely using the radio remote control, if the distance between the radio remote control and the vehicle is at least 2 m.

After pressing the button, the warning light in the remote control gives the user different kinds of feedback.

Display warning light B » Fig. 128	Meaning
Lights up green for around 2 seconds.	The auxiliary heating has been switched on.
Lights up red for around 2 seconds.	The auxiliary heating has been switched off.
Slowly flashes green for around 2 seconds.	The ignition signal was not received.
Quickly flashes green for around 2 seconds.	The auxiliary heating is blocked, e. g because the tank is nearly empty or there is a fault in the auxiliary heating.
Flashes red for around 2 seconds.	The switch off signal was not received.
Lights up orange for around 2 seconds, then green or red.	The battery is weak, however the switching on or off signal was received.
Lights up orange for around 2 seconds, then flashes green or red.	The battery is weak, however the switching on or off signal was not received.
Flashes orange for around 5 seconds.	The battery is discharged, however the switching on or off signal was not received.

Replace the battery » page 193.

CAUTION

- The radio remote control comprises electronic components and must therefore be protected against water, severe impacts and direct sunlight.
- When the battery is fully charged, the range of the remote control is a few hundred metres. Obstacles between the radio remote control and the vehicle, bad weather conditions and a weaker battery can clearly reduce the range.

Driving

Starting-off and Driving

Starting and stopping the engine using the key

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

With the key in the ignition, the ignition can be switched on and off and the engine can be started / stopped.

WARNING

- While driving with the engine stopped, the ignition must always be switched on » page 114, *Turn ignition on / off and start the engine*.
- With the ignition off, the steering may lock » page 114 - danger of an accident!
- Do not withdraw the ignition key from the ignition lock until the vehicle has come to a stop » page 121, *Parking*. Otherwise, the steering may lock - danger of an accident!
- Never leave the key in the vehicle when you exit the vehicle. Unauthorized persons, such as children, for example, could lock the car, turn on the ignition or start the engine - there is a danger of injury, damage and accidents!
- Never leave the vehicle unattended with the engine running - there is risk of accident, damage or theft!
- Never switch off the engine before the vehicle is stationary – risk of accident!

WARNING

- Never (e.g. in garages) run the engine in a closed place - there is the danger of poisoning and death!
- Do not leave any items (e.g. cloths or tools) in the engine compartment. This presents a fire hazard and the risk of engine damage.
- Never cover the engine with additional insulation material (e.g. with a cover) – risk of fire!

CAUTION

- Only start the engine when the engine and the vehicle are stationary - there is a danger of starter and engine damage!
- Do not push-start the engine – risk of damaging the engine and the catalytic converter. The battery from another vehicle can be used as a jump-start aid » page 189.

Note

Do not warm up the engine while the vehicle is stationary. If possible, start your journey as soon as the engine has started. Through this, the engine reaches its operating temperature faster.

Electronic immobilizer

Read and observe ! and ! on page 113 first.

The electronic immobiliser (hereinafter referred to as immobiliser) makes the attempted theft or unauthorised use of your vehicle more difficult.

An electronic chip is integrated in the head of the key. The immobiliser is deactivated with the aid of this chip when the key is inserted in the ignition lock.

As soon as the ignition key is removed from the ignition lock, the immobiliser is automatically activated.

Operational problems

If a component in the immobiliser key fails, it is not possible to start the engine. A corresponding message appears in the display of the instrument cluster to explain the immobiliser is active.

To start, use the other vehicle key or seek help from a specialist garage.

Steering lock locking / unlocking

Read and observe ! and ! on page 113 first.

The steering lock (steering lock) deters any attempted theft of your vehicle.

Locking
› Withdraw the ignition key.
› Turn the steering wheel to the left or right until the steering lock clicks into place.

Unlocking
› Insert the key into the ignition lock.
› Switch on the ignition » page 114.

The steering wheel is unlocked.

If the ignition switch cannot be turned on, then turn the steering wheel back and forth slightly and thereby unlock the steering lock.

Turn ignition on / off and start the engine

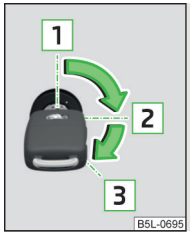

Fig. 129
Positions of the vehicle key in the ignition lock

Read and observe ! and ! on page 113 first.

Positions of the vehicle key in the ignition lock » Fig. 129
1 Ignition switched off, engine switched off
2 Ignition switched on
3 Starting engine

Switching ignition on/off
› Turn key to position 2.

The ignition is switched on.

› Turn key to position 1.

The ignition is switched off.

Starting the engine
› Firmly apply the handbrake.
› For vehicles with **manual transmission**, shift gear stick to neutral, depress the clutch pedal and hold it there until the engine starts.
› On vehicles with **automatic transmission**, place the selector lever in position **P** or **N** and depress the brake pedal until the engine starts.
› Turn the key into position 3 to the stop and release immediately after the engine has been started – do not apply the accelerator.

After letting go, the vehicle key will return to position 2.

On vehicles with **diesel engines** the glow plug warning light goes on during starting. The engine can be started after the indicator light goes out.

If the engine does not start within 10 seconds, turn the key to position 1. Repeat the start-up process after approx. half a minute.

Note
▪ The engine running noises may louder at first be louder for a short time after starting the cold engine. This is quite normal and is not an operating problem.
▪ You should not switch on any major electrical components during the heating period otherwise the vehicle battery will be drained unnecessarily.

Stopping the engine

Read and observe ! and ! on page 113 first.

› Stop the vehicle » page 121, *Parking*.
› Turn key to position 1 » Fig. 129 *on page 114*.

The engine and the ignition are switched off simultaneously.

For vehicles with automatic transmission, the ignition key can only be removed if the selector lever is in position **P** .

CAUTION
Do not switch the engine off immediately at the end of your journey after the engine has been operated over a prolonged period at high loads but leave it to run at an idling speed for about 1 minute. This prevents any possible accumulation of heat when the engine is switched off.

Note

After switching off the ignition, the radiator fan may intermittently continue to operate for approx. 10 minutes.

Starting and stopping the engine at the push of the button

Introduction

Fig. 130
Starter button (START ENGINE STOP)

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

The ignition can be switched on and off and the engine can be started / stopped with the starter button » Fig. 130.

The key must be in the vehicle to unlock the steering wheel, start the vehicle and drive.

WARNING

- Never leave the key in the vehicle when you exit the vehicle. Unauthorized persons, such as children, for example, could lock the car, turn on the ignition or start the engine - there is a danger of injury, damage and accidents!
- Never leave the vehicle unattended with the engine running - there is a risk of theft etc!
- Never switch off the engine before the vehicle is stationary – risk of accident!

WARNING

Never (e.g. in garages) run the engine in a closed place - there is the danger of poisoning and death!

CAUTION

- The system can recognize the valid key, even if it has been accidentally left on the vehicle roof - there is danger of loss or damage to the key!
- Only start the engine when the engine and the vehicle are stationary - there is a danger of starter and engine damage!
- Do not push-start the engine – risk of damaging the engine and the catalytic converter. The battery from another vehicle can be used as a jump-start aid » page 189.

Note

- Do not warm up the engine while the vehicle is stationary. If possible, start your journey as soon as the engine has started. Through this, the engine reaches its operating temperature faster.
- The system is protected against inadvertently switching off the engine while driving, this means that the engine can only be switched off in an emergency » page 116.

Steering column lock locking / unlocking

Read and observe ! and ! on page 115 first.

The steering lock (steering lock) deters any attempted theft of your vehicle.

Locking

› Switch off the engine.
› Open the driver door.

The steering lock is locked automatically.

If the driver's door is opened and the ignition is switched off afterwards, the steering is only locked after the vehicle has been locked.

Unlocking

› Open the driver's door and get into the vehicle.
› Close the driver's door.

The steering is locked automatically.

Under certain circumstances (e.g. after switching off the ignition and opening the driver's door), the steering is enabled only when the ignition is switched on or the engine is started.

WARNING

Never let the vehicle roll with locked steering lock - there is a risk of accident!

Switch ignition on / off

Read and observe ! and ! on page 115 first.

› Press the button » Fig. 130 *on page 115* briefly.

The ignition is switched on or off.

On vehicles fitted with a **manual gearbox**, the clutch pedal must not be depressed while switching the ignition on or off, otherwise the system would try to start.

On vehicles fitted with a **automatic gearbox**, the brake pedal must not be depressed while switching the ignition on or off, otherwise the system would try to start.

If the driver's door is opened while the ignition is on, an audible signal sounds and the following message appears in the instrument cluster display.

M Ignition on.
S IGNITION ON

When leaving the vehicle always switch off the ignition.

Starting the engine

Read and observe ! and ! on page 115 first.

Starting the engine

› Firmly apply the handbrake.
› For vehicles with **manual transmission**, shift gear stick to neutral, depress the clutch pedal and hold it there until the engine starts.
› On vehicles with **automatic transmission**, place the selector lever in position **P** or **N** and depress the brake pedal until the engine starts.
› Press and hold the starter button » Fig. 130 *on page 115* [1] until the engine starts.

In vehicles with **diesel engines** after pressing the button, the glow plug warning light lights up. The engine can be started after the indicator light goes out.

Note

▪ The engine running noises may louder at first be louder for a short time after starting the cold engine. This is quite normal and is not an operating problem.
▪ You should not switch on any major electrical components during the heating period otherwise the vehicle battery will be drained unnecessarily.

Switching off the engine

Read and observe ! and ! on page 115 first.

Switching off

› Stop the vehicle » page 121, *Parking*.
› Press the button » Fig. 130 *on page 115* briefly.

The engine and the ignition are switched off simultaneously.

Emergency shutdown

If necessary and in exceptional cases, the engine may even be turned off while driving.

› Press the starter button » Fig. 130 *on page 115* for longer than 1 second or twice within 1 second.

After the emergency stop of the motor, the steering lock will remain unlocked.

CAUTION

Do not switch the engine off immediately at the end of your journey after the engine has been operated over a prolonged period at high loads but leave it to run at an idling speed for about 1 minute. This prevents any possible accumulation of heat when the engine is switched off.

Note

After switching off the ignition, the radiator fan may intermittently continue to operate for approx. 10 minutes.

[1] On vehicles with the START-STOP system, it is sufficient to press the starter button briefly. The motor will then automatically start.

Problems starting the engine

Fig. 131
Starting the engine - Press the button with the key

Read and observe ! and ! on page 115 first.

The key in the vehicle cannot be verified
If the key in the vehicle cannot be verified, then engine cannot be started by pressing a button.

The one of the following messages is shown in the information cluster display.

M **Key not found.**

S **NO KEY**

The reasons for this may be as follows.
- The battery in the key is almost out of charge.
- The key is malfunctioning.
- There is interference in the signal between the system and the key (strong electromagnetic field).

Try to start the engine by pressing the knob with the key » Fig. 131.

System fault
If the following message appears on the display of the instrument cluster there is a system malfunction.

M **Keyless faulty.**

S **CHECK KEYLESS**

Try to start the engine by pressing the knob with the key » Fig. 131.

! CAUTION
The key can only be verified if it is in the vehicle. It is therefore not always necessary to know where the key is.

i Note
- When attempting to start, the key bit must be pointed towards the button » Fig. 131.
- If engine fails to start after pressing the button with the key, seek specialist help.

START-STOPsystem

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

The START STOPsystem (hereinafter referred to as the system) reduces CO_2emissions and harmful emissions, and saves fuel.

If the system determine that the engine is not needed when the vehicle stops (e.g. at the traffic lights), it turns off the engine and starts it again when moving off.

The system function depends on many factors. Some of them are down to the driver, the others are systemic and can neither be influenced nor identified.

Therefore the system may react differently in situations which seem identical from the driver's perspective.

The system is automatically activated **every** time the ignition is switched on (even where this has previously been manually deactivated with the button A OFF).

i Note
If the engine has stopped due to the system, the ignition remains on.

Fig. 132
Prompt in the MAXI DOT display

Vehicles with manual transmission
The engine is automatically switched **off** as soon as the vehicle comes to a halt, the shift lever is moved into neutral and the clutch pedal is released.

The engine is automatically **started** as soon as the clutch pedal is depressed.

Vehicles with automatic transmission
The engine is automatically switched **off** as soon as the vehicle comes to a halt and the brake pedal is operated.

The engine is automatically **started** as soon as the brake pedal is released.

Requirements for the system to function correctly
The following conditions must be met for the system to function correctly.
- ✓ The driver's door is closed.
- ✓ The driver has fastened the seat belt.
- ✓ The bonnet is closed.
- ✓ The driving speed was higher than 4 km.h after the last stop.
- ✓ No trailer is coupled.

System status
The system status is indicated in the instrument cluster display when stopped.

The engine is automatically switched off; when the vehicle moves off the ignition process will be automatically initiated.

M Ⓐ » Fig. 132
S **START-STOP ACTIVE**

The engine is not automatically switched off.

M » Fig. 132
S **START-STOP NOT POSSIBLE**

Reasons for the engine running
It may be essential for the engine to keep running when the vehicle comes to a halt, for the following reasons.
- ▸ The engine temperature for the proper function of the system has not yet been reached.
- ▸ The charge state of the vehicle battery is too low.
- ▸ The current consumption is too high.
- ▸ High air-conditioning or heating capacity (high fan speed, big difference between the desired and actual interior temperature).

When the engine is shut-down automatically and the system detects that the engine is required such as when the brake pedal is pressed repeatedly then the system automatically starts the engine.

Note
- ▪ If the vehicle remains outdoors for a long time in minus temperatures or in direct sunlight, it can take several hours until the internal temperature of the vehicle battery reaches a suitable temperature for proper operation of the START STOP system.
- ▪ If the driver's seat belt is removed for more than approx. 30 seconds or the driver's door is opened during stop mode, the engine will have to be started manually.
- ▪ No automatic engine shut-down takes place when a vehicle with **automatic transmission** is moving at low speed (e.g. during a traffic jam) and remains stationary after pressing the brake pedal lightly. Automatic engine shutdown takes place if you press the brake pedal down with more force.
- ▪ For vehicles with **automatic transmission** there is no automatic engine shut-down when the system detects a manoeuvring action due to a large steering angle.

Manually deactivating/activating the system

Fig. 133
Button for the START-STOP system

Deactivating/activating
› Press the symbol button » Fig. 133.

When system is deactivated, the warning light in the button illuminates.

If the system is turned off, it will be automatically reactivated after turning the ignition off and on.

Note
If the system is deactivated when the engine is turned off automatically, then the automatic start process takes place.

Information messages

The warning symbols are shown in the instrument cluster display.

Start engine manually!
START MANUALLY

If for example the driver's seat belt is stored, the engine must be started manually.

On vehicles with the starter button the ignition is turned off by the first press of the start button, only after pressing for the second time is the start process initiated.

Error: Start-Stop
ERROR START-STOP

A system error is present. Seek help from a specialist garage.

Brakes and parking

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

WARNING
- Greater physical effort is required for braking when the engine is switched off – risk of accident!
- During the braking procedure on a vehicle with manual transmission, when the vehicle is in gear and at low revs, press the clutch pedal. Otherwise, the functionality of the brake system may be impaired – risk of accident!
- When leaving the vehicle never leave persons leave unattended in the vehicle who could release the brake. The vehicle could then start to move – risk of accident!
- Observe the recommendations on the new brake pads » page 125, *New brake pads*.

CAUTION
Never let the brakes slip with light pressure on the pedal if braking is not necessary. This causes the brakes to overheat and can also result in a longer braking distance and excessive wear.

Information on braking

Read and observe ! and ! on page 119 first.

Wear-and-tear
The wear of the brake pads is dependent on the operating conditions and driving style.

The brake pads wear more quickly if a lot of journeys are completed in towns and over short distances or if a very sporty style of driving is adopted.

If operated under **severe conditions**, the thickness of the brake pads must be checked by a specialist garage between service appointments as well.

Wet roads or road salt
The performance of the brakes can be delayed as the brake discs and brake pads may be moist or have a coating of ice or layer of salt on them in winter. The brakes are cleaned and dried by applying the brakes several times » !.

Corrosion
Corrosion on the brake discs and dirt on the bake pads occur if the vehicle has been parked for a long period and if you do not make much use of the braking system. The brakes are cleaned by applying the brakes several times » !.

Long or steep slopes
Before travelling a long distance with a steep gradient, reduce speed and shift into the next lowest gear. As a result, the braking effect of the engine will be used, reducing the load on the brakes. Any additional braking should be completed intermittently, not continuously.

Emergency brake display
If the brakes are applied in full and the vehicle systems evaluate the situation as dangerous for the traffic following behind, the brake light flashes automatically.

After the speed was reduced below around 10 km/h or the vehicle was stopped, the brake light stops flashing and the hazard warning light system switches on. The hazard warning light system is switched off automatically after accelerating or driving off again.

Faults in the brake surface
If it is found that the braking distance has suddenly become longer and that the brake pedal can be depressed further, the brake system may be faulty.

Visit a specialist garage immediately and adjust your style of driving appropriately, as you will not know the exact extent of the damage.

Low brake fluid level
An insufficient level of brake fluid may result in problems in the brake system. The level of the brake fluid is monitored electronically » page 33, *Brake system*.

Brake booster
The brake booster increases the pressure generated with the brake pedal. The brake booster only operates when the engine is running.

WARNING
Only apply the brakes for the purpose of drying and cleaning the brake discs if the traffic conditions permit this. Do not place any other road users in jeopardy.

Handbrake

Fig. 134
Handbrake

Read and observe ! and ! on page 119 first.

The hand brake is used when stopping and parking for securing the vehicle against unwanted movement.

Apply
› Pull the handbrake lever firmly upwards.

Release
› Pull the handbrake lever up slightly **and at the same time** push in the lock button » Fig. 134 .
› Move the lever right down while pressing the lock button.

The handbrake indicator light (P) lights up when the handbrake is applied, provided the ignition is on.

A warning signal sounds if the vehicle is inadvertently driven off with the handbrake applied.

The following message is shown in the MAXI DOT display.

Release parking brake!

The handbrake warning is activated if the vehicle is driven at a speed of more than around 5 km/h for more than 3 seconds.

WARNING
Please note that the handbrake must be fully released. A handbrake which is only partially released can result in the rear brakes overheating. This can have a negative effect on the operation of the brake system – risk of accident!

Parking

Read and observe ! and ! on page 119 first.

When stopping and parking, look for a place with a suitable surface » !.

Only carry out the activities while parking in the specified order.

› Bring the vehicle to a stop and depress the brake pedal.
› Firmly apply the handbrake.
› On vehicles with **automatic transmission** place the selector lever in the **P** position.
› Switch off the engine.
› For vehicles with **Manual transmission** select the **1st gear** or the **Reverse gear R**.
› Release the brake pedal.

! WARNING

The exhaust system components can become very hot. Therefore, never stop the vehicle at places where the underside of your vehicle can come into contact with flammable materials such as dry grass, undergrowth, leaves, spilled fuel or such like. - Risk of fire and serious injury can occur!

Manual gear changing and pedals

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Manual gear changing

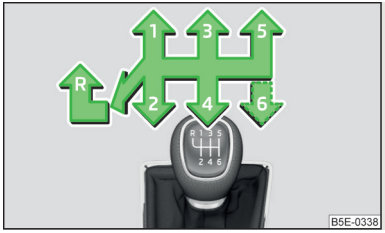

Fig. 135
Gearshift pattern of 5 gear or 6 gear manual gearbox

The shift pattern for the individual gear positions is shown on the gear lever » Fig. 135.

The gearshift indicator should be observed when changing gear » page 40.

Always depress the clutch pedal all the way down. This prevents uneven wear on the clutch.

Reverse gear is engaged
› Stop the vehicle.
› The clutch pedal is fully depressed.
› Move the shift lever to the idle position switch and press down.
› Move the shift lever fully to the left and then forward into **R** position » Fig. 135.

The reversing lights will come on once reverse gear is engaged, provided the ignition is on.

! WARNING

Never engage reverse gear when driving – risk of accident!

! CAUTION

- If not in the process of changing gear, do not leave your hand on the gearshift lever while driving. The pressure from the hand can cause the gearshift mechanism to wear excessively.
- When stopping on a slope, never try to hold the vehicle using the accelerator pedal and the clutch pedal – this may lead to damage of the clutch parts.

Pedals

The operation of the pedals must not be hindered under any circumstances!

In the driver's footwell, only a format may be used, which is attached to the two corresponding attachment points.

Only use factory-supplied foot mats or foot mats from the range of ŠKODAOriginal Accessories, which are fitted to two attachment points.

! WARNING

No objects may be placed in the driver's footwell – risk due to obstruction or limitation of pedal operation.

Automatic transmission

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

The automatic transmission performs automatic gear changes.

The modes of the automatic transmission can be adjusted by the driver by means of the selector lever.

WARNING

- No throttle when it is set before starting the mode for moving forward with the selector lever - there is a risk of accident!
- Never move the selector lever to mode **R** or **P** when driving – risk of an accident!
- If the vehicle is in the mode selected **D**, **S**, **R** or Tiptronic and the engine stops when at idle speed, then the brake pedal must be pressed. Even when the engine is idling, the power transmission is never completely interrupted – the vehicle creeps.
- When leaving the vehicle, the selector lever is always to put in the **P** mode. Otherwise, the vehicle could be set in motion - risk of accident!

CAUTION

- If the selector lever is moved to mode **N** while driving, the accelerator pedal must be released and you will need to wait until the engine has reached its idling speed before moving the selector lever to a forward driving mode again.
- When the outdoor temperature is below -10 ° C, the selector lever when starting must always be in **P** mode.
- When stopping on a slope, never try to hold the vehicle using the accelerator pedal – this may lead to gear damage.

Note

After the ignition is switched off, the ignition key can only be withdrawn if the selector lever is in the position **P**.

Modes and use of selector lever

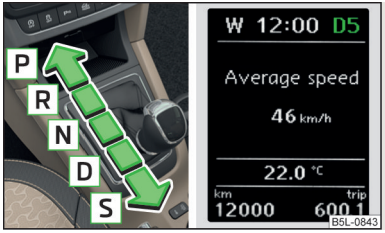

Fig. 136
Selector lever/display

Read and observe ! and ! on page 122 first.

When the ignition is switched on, the gearbox mode and the currently selected gear are indicated in the display » Fig. 136.

The following modes can be selected with the selector lever » Fig. 136.

P – Parking mode
The driven wheels are locked mechanically in this mode.

The parking mode must only be selected when the vehicle is stationary.

R - Reverse gear
Reverse gear can only be engaged when the vehicle is stationary and the engine is at idling speed.

N - Neutral
The power transmission to the drive wheels is interrupted in this mode.

D - Mode for forwards travel (normal programme)
In mode **D**, the forward gears are automatically changed according to the engine load, accelerator pedal actuation and driving speed.

S - Mode for forwards travel (sports programme)
In mode **S , the forward gears are shifted automatically up and down at higher engine speeds** than in mode **D**.

Before changing to mode **S** from mode **D**, press the lock button in the direction of arrow 1 » Fig. 137 *on page 123*.

Fault in the automatic gearbox
A fault in the automatic gearbox can, for example, be noticeable by the following.
- Only certain gears are selected.
- The reverse gear **R** cannot be used.
- Shifting gears in Tiptronic mode is not possible.

CAUTION
If an error occurs on the automatic transmission the help of a specialist firm should be sought immediately - there is a risk of damaging the vehicle.

Selector lever lock

Fig. 137
Shift lock button

Read and observe and on page 122 first.

The selector lever is locked in mode **P** and **N** to prevent that the forward driving is selected accidentally, thereby setting the vehicle in motion.

The selector lever is locked only when the vehicle is stationary and at speeds up to 5 km/h.

The selector lever lock is indicated by the illumination of the warning light .

The selector lever is not locked when quickly moving across the position **N** (e.g. from **R** to **D**). This, for example, helps to rock out a vehicle that is stuck, e.g. in a bank of snow. The selector lever lock will engage if the lever is in position **N** for more than approx. 2 seconds without the brake pedal being depressed.

Releasing selector lever from mode P or N (selector lever lock)
› Press the brake pedal and the lock button at the same time in the direction of 1 » Fig. 137 .

Just depress the brake pedal, if you would like to change from the mode **N** to **D**.

Defective selector lever lock
If the selector lever lock is defective or its power supply is interrupted (e.g. discharged vehicle battery, faulty fuse), the selector lever can no longer be moved out of position **P** in the normal manner and the vehicle can no longer be driven. The selector lever must be unlocked specially » page 195.

Note
If you want to move the selector lever from mode **P** to mode **D** or vice versa, move the selector lever quickly. This prevents that you accidentally select mode **R** or **N**.

Manual shifting of gears (Tiptronic)

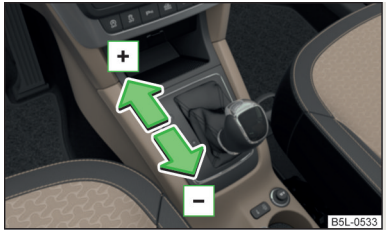

Fig. 138
Selector lever

Read and observe and on page 122 first.

Tiptronic mode makes it possible to manually shift gears on the selector lever. This mode can be selected both while stopping and while driving.

The currently selected gear is indicated in the display » Fig. 136 *on page 122*.

The gearshift indicator should be observed when changing gear » page 40.

Switching to manual shifting
› Push the gear selector from mode **D** towards the right, or left in a right-hand drive vehicle.

Shifting up gears
› Push the selector lever forwards + » Fig. 138.

Shifting down gears
› Push the selector lever backwards - » Fig. 138 .

Note

▪ It may be beneficial, for example, when travelling downhill, to use manual shifting of gears. Shifting to a lower gear reduces the load on the brakes and hence the wear of the brakes » page 119, *Information on braking*.
▪ When accelerating, the gearbox automatically shifts up into the higher gear just before the maximum permissible engine speed is reached.
▪ If a lower gear is selected, the gearbox does not shift down until there is no risk of the engine overrevving.

Starting-off and driving

Read and observe ! and ! on page 122 first.

Starting off

› Start the engine.
› Firmly depress and hold the brake pedal.
› Press the lock button in the direction of 1 » Fig. 137 *on page 123* and hold.
› Move the selector lever into the desired position » page 122 and then release the lock button.
› Release the brake pedal and accelerate.

Stopping (while the car is moving)

› Depress the brake pedal and bring the vehicle to a stop.
› Keep holding the brake pedal until driving is resumed.

The selector lever position **N** does not have to be selected when stopping for a short time, such as at a cross roads.

Kickdown

The kickdown function allows you to achieve the maximum acceleration of your vehicle while driving.

When the accelerator pedal is fully depressed, the kickdown function is activated in any forward driving mode.

The gearbox shifts down one or more gears depending on the vehicle speed and engine speed, and the vehicle accelerates.

The gearbox does not shift up into the highest gear until the engine has reached its maximum revolutions for this gear range.

Driving in Neutral (Coasting)[1)]

› In the MAXI DOT display in the menu **Settings** activate the menu item **Coasting** » page 44.
› Move the selector lever into the position **D**.
› Remove your foot from the accelerator pedal (the speed is higher than 20 km/h).

The vehicle moves without the braking effect of the engine.

The gear is automatically inserted again by depressing either the accelerator or brake pedal.

! WARNING

Rapid acceleration, particularly on slippery roads, can lead to loss of control of the vehicle – risk of accident!

Running-in and economical driving

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

The fuel consumption, degree of pollution and vehicle wear depend on driving style, road condition, weather conditions and the like.

Running-in

Driving in the engine

The engine has to be run in during the first 1 500 kilometres. During this period, the driving style decides on the quality of the driving-in process.

During the first 1 000 km we recommend not driving faster than 3/4 of the maximum permissible engine speed, not to drive at full throttle and to dispense with the trailer.

In the area of **1,000 to 1,500 kilometres** the engine load can be increased up to the maximum permitted engine speed.

1) This function is only valid for some engines.

New tyres
New tyres must firstly be "run in", as they do not offer optimal grip at first.

Therefore, drive especially carefully for the first 500 km or so.

New brake pads
New brake pads have to first "grind in" because these do not initially have the best possible braking effect.

Therefore, drive especially carefully for the first 200 km or so.

Tips for economical driving

To achieve the lowest possible fuel consumption, the following instructions must be observed.

Looking ahead when driving
Avoid unnecessary acceleration and braking.

Switch in an energy saving and timely manner
Observe the recommended gear » page 40.

Avoid full throttle and high speeds
Fuel consumption can be reduced by half if only three-quarters of the possible top speed of your vehicle is used.

Reducing idling
If the vehicle is fitted with the START - STOP system there is an automatic reduction of the idling. If the engine is stopped on vehicles without START-STOP system, such as when waiting in a traffic jam, the fuel economy is already greater after 30 - 40 s than the fuel quantity which is required for engine restart.

Avoid short distances
When driving a short distance of less than about 4 km, the engine cannot reach its operating temperature. As long as the engine has not reached operating temperature, the fuel consumption is significantly higher than with the engine hot.

Pay attention to the correct tyre inflation pressure being maintained
Further information » page 176.

Avoid unnecessary ballast
Per 100 kg of weight, consumption increases by about 0.3 l/100 km. At a speed of 100 - 120 km/h, a vehicle fitted with a roof rack cross member without a load will use about 10 % more fuel than normal due to the increased aerodynamic drag.

Saving electricity
Only turn on electrical consumers (e.g. seat, window and mirror heating, etc.) for as long as necessary.

Use the cooling system economically
The air conditioning system compressor uses power from the engine when in cooling mode, which will affect the fuel consumption.

It recommended to open the windows or the doors of a vehicle for which the interior has been strongly heated through the effect of direct sunlight in order to allow the heated air to escape.

The cooling system should not be on if the windows are open.

Avoiding damage to your vehicle

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

This section of the manual contains important information on preventing damage to the vehicle while driving.

Driving Tips

Only drive on such roads and in such terrain, which match the vehicle parameters » page 204, *Technical data* as well as your driving skills.

The driver is always responsible for deciding whether the vehicle can handle travelling in the given terrain.

When travelling off paved roads, we recommend activating the OFF ROAD mode » page 129.

WARNING

▪ Always adjust your driving to the current terrain and weather conditions. Excessive speed or incorrect driving manoeuvres can cause damage to the vehicle and lead to serious injuries.
▪ Combustible objects such as dry leaves or twigs caught under the base of the vehicle could ignite on hot vehicle parts - risk of fire!

CAUTION

▪ Pay attention to the ground clearance of the vehicle! When driving over objects which are larger than the ground clearance, the vehicle can get damaged.
▪ Any objects that get trapped under the vehicle floor must be removed as soon as possible. These objects can damage the fuel lines, the brake system, seals and other parts of the vehicle.
▪ Drive slowly in unknown terrain and watch out for unexpected obstacles, such as potholes, rocks, stumps, etc.
▪ Check up on confusing sections of unpaved roads before travelling on them and consider whether such travelling is possible without risk.

Driving through water

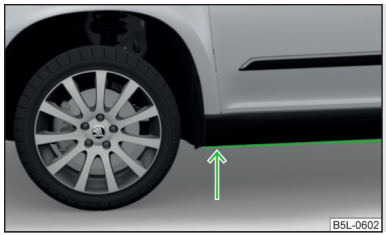

Fig. 139
Maximum permissible water level when driving through water

The following must be observed to avoid damage to the vehicle when driving through bodies of water (e.g. flooded roads).

› Therefore determine the depth of the water before driving through bodies of water.

The water level must not reach above the web of the lower beam » Fig. 139.

› Do not drive any faster than at a walking speed.

At a higher speed, a water wave can form in front of the vehicle which can cause water to penetrate into the air induction system of the engine or into other parts of the vehicle.

› Never stop in the water, do not reverse and do not switch the engine off.

CAUTION

▪ Should water penetrate into the intake system of the engine, there is a threat of serious damage being incurred by the engine parts!
▪ When driving through water, some vehicle parts such as chassis, electrics or transmission can be severely damaged.
▪ Oncoming vehicles can generate water waves which can exceed the permissible water level for your vehicle.
▪ Potholes, mud or rocks can be hidden under the water, making it difficult or impossible to drive through the body of water.
▪ Do not drive through salt water, as the salt can cause corrosion. An vehicle coming into contact with salt water is to be thoroughly rinsed with fresh water.

Assist systems

General information

Introduction

WARNING

The following general information regarding the use of assistance systems must be observed.

- The assistance systems only serve to support and do not relieve the driver of the responsibility for driving the vehicle.
- The increased safety provision, as well as the increased occupant protection provided by the assistance systems must not tempt you to take risks - risk of accident!
- Adjust the speed and driving style to the current visibility, weather, road and traffic conditions.
- The assistance systems have physical and system-related limitations. For this reason, the driver may experience some undesired or delayed system responses in certain situations. You should therefore always be alert and ready to intervene!
- Only activate, deactivate or set the assistance systems so that you have the car fully under control in every traffic situation - risk of accident!

Braking and stabilisation systems

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

This chapter describes the functions of the brake and stabilization systems. The error display is in Chapter » page 32, *Warning lights*.

The brake and stabilization systems are automatically activated each time the ignition is switched on, unless otherwise indicated.

WARNING

The general information relating to the use of assistance systems must be observed » page 127, in section *Introduction*.

Stability Control (ESC)

Fig. 140
Press the ESC system: Activating/deactivating TCS

Read and observe on page 127 first.

The ESC improves vehicle stability in dynamic driving situations, such as when the vehicle starts to skid.

The ESC monitors whether the desired direction of the current vehicle motion is occurring. In case of any deviation (e.g. over steer), the ESC automatically brakes individual wheels to maintain the desired direction.

During an intervention of the system, the indicator light flashes in the instrument cluster.

The ESC system cannot be deactivated. The » Fig. 140 button can only be used to deactivate the TCS » page 128.

The warning light lights up in the instrument cluster when the ASR is deactivated.

Anti-lock braking system (ABS)

Read and observe on page 127 first.

ABS prevents the wheels locking when braking. Thus helping the driver to maintain control of the vehicle.

The intervention of the ABS is noticeable from the **pulsating movements of the brake pedal** which is accompanied by noises.

When the ABS system is active, do not brake periodically or reduce the pressure on the brake pedal.

Traction control (TCS)

Fig. 141
Button for the TCS system: TCS disable / enable (vehicle without ESC)

Read and observe ! on page 127 first.

TCS prevents the spinning of the wheels of the driven axle. TCS reduces the drive power transmitted to the wheels in the case of slipping wheels. Thus, for example, driving on road surfaces with low grip is made easier.

If your vehicle is fitted with the ESC system, the ASR is integrated into the ESC system » page 127.

During a TCS intervention, the indicator light flashes in the instrument cluster.

The TCS should normally always be enabled. The system should be deactivated only in the following situations, for example.
- When driving with snow chains.
- When driving in deep snow or on a very loose surface.
- When it is necessary to "rock" a car free when it has become stuck.

The ASR can be deactivated via the ASR OFF » Fig. 141symbol button.

The warning light lights up in the instrument cluster when the ASR is deactivated.

Electronic Differential Lock (EDL)

Read and observe ! on page 127 first.

EDL prevents the turning of the respective wheel of the driven axle. EDL brakes the spinning wheel, if necessary, and transmits the driving force to the other driving wheel. Driving becomes easier on road surfaces with different traction under each wheel of the driven axle.

EDL switches off automatically to avoid excessive heat generation on the brake of the wheel being braked. Once the brakes have cooled down, there is an automatic re-activation of EDL.

Driver Steering Recommendation (DSR)

Read and observe ! on page 127 first.

In critical situations, the DSR provides the driver with a steering recommendation in order to stabilise the vehicle. The DSR is activated, for example, on the right and left vehicle side when braking sharply on different road surfaces.

Brake Assist (HBA)

Read and observe ! on page 127 first.

The HBA increases the braking effect and helps to reduce the braking distance.

The HBA is activated by very quick operation of the brake pedal. In order to achieve the shortest possible braking distance, the brake pedal must be applied firmly until the vehicle has come to a standstill.

The HBA function is automatically deactivated when the brake pedal is released.

Hill Start Assist (HHC)

Read and observe ! on page 127 first.

When driving on slopes, HHC allows you to move your foot from the brake pedal to the accelerator pedal without having to use the handbrake.

The system holds the brake pressure produced by the activation of the brake pedal for approx. 2 seconds after the brake pedal is released.

The HHC is active from a 5% slope if the driver's door is closed. HHC is only ever active on slopes when in forward or reverse start off.

Trailer stabilization system (TSA)

Read and observe ! on page 127 first.

The TSA helps the combination stable in situations where the trailer sways and then the whole trailer combination.

TSA brakes the individual wheels of the towing vehicle in order to damp the rocking motion of the entire vehicle combination.

The following conditions are required for the correct TSA function.

- ✓ The trailer was shipped from the factory or purchased from the ŠKODA genuine accessories.
- ✓ The trailer is electrically connected to the towing vehicle via the trailer socket.
- ✓ The TCS is activated.
- ✓ The speed is higher than approx. 60 km/h.

Further information » page 141, *Hitch and trailer*.

OFF ROAD-mode

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

The OFF ROAD mode includes several features that help to overcome difficult navigable routes when travelling on non-paved roads.

But even with OFF ROAD mode activated, your vehicle is never a true SUV.

! WARNING

- The general information relating to the use of assistance systems must be observed » page 127, ! in section *Introduction*.
- A lack of fuel can cause irregular engine running or cause the engine to shut down. This would lead the OFF ROAD mode to lose its effectiveness - risk of accident!

! CAUTION

- The OFF ROAD mode is not designed for the use on common roads.
- All four wheels must be fitted with the same tyres approved by the manufacturer to ensure theOFF ROAD mode operates correctly.

Operation

Fig. 142
OFF ROAD button

Read and observe ! and ! on page 129 first.

We recommend that you activate the OFF ROAD mode for every trip on non-paved roads.

Activating

› Press the symbol button » Fig. 142.

The symbol in the button comes on.

Deactivate

› Press the symbol key » Fig. 142 or turn the ignition off.

The symbol in the button is no longer illuminated.

So that an engagement of the OFF ROAD mode can take place, the following conditions must be met.

✓ The OFF ROAD mode is enabled.
✓ The vehicle is moving at a speed of less than 30 km/h.
✓ The warning light illuminates in the instrument cluster.

The following functions are integrated in the OFF ROAD mode.

▸ Downhill Drive Support » page 130.
▸ TCS OFF ROAD » page 130.
▸ EDL OFF ROAD » page 130.
▸ ABS OFF ROAD » page 130.
▸ Start-Off Assistant » page 131.

Note

If the engine stalls while driving and is started again within 30 seconds, then OFF ROAD mode will be automatically activated.

Hill Descent Assistant

Read and observe and on page 129 first.

The hill descent assistant (hereinafter referred to as assistant), with its automatic braking action on all wheels, ensures a constant speed is maintained on a steep slope when driving forwards and reversing.

During an intervention of the Assistants, the warning light flashes in the instrument cluster.

The assistant is automatically engaged under the following conditions.

✓ The engine is running.
✓ For vehicles with **Manual transmission** the shift lever is in the neutral position and or the 1st, 2nd, 3rd gear, or reverse gear is engaged.
✓ On vehicles with an **automatic transmission**, the selector lever is in the R, N, D, S position or in the Tiptronic position.
✓ The downhill gradient is at least 10 % (when driving over sleepers, the limit can briefly drop to 8 %).
✓ Neither the accelerator nor the brake pedal is operated.

Driving speed

Initiate the downhill decent at a reasonable speed up to 30 km / h the hill descent assist maintains this speed when driving downhill constant.

The assistant can maintain constant speed of about 2 - 30 km / h.

If a forwards or reverse gear is engaged for vehicles with **Manual transmission**, the speed must be high enough to avoid stalling the engine.

By pressing the accelerator or brake pedal, the speed can be increased or reduced. This is true even if the shift lever is in the neutral position and the selector lever in the N position. The engagement of the assistant is resumed after the pedal is released.

WARNING

For the correct operation of the assistant the road surface must be sufficiently adherent. The assistant cannot properly fulfil its function on slushy soil due to physical reasons (e.g. ice or mud). - there is a risk of an accident!

Note

During an active intervention of the assistant, the brake lights do not light up.

TCSOFF ROAD

Read and observe and on page 129 first.

The ASR OFF ROAD makes starting and driving on an unpaved surface easier as it partially allows wheel-spin.

Note

When disabled, the TCS » Fig. 140 *on page 127* OFF ROAD mode works without the support of the TCS OFF ROAD.

EDS OFF ROAD

Read and observe and on page 129 first.

The EDS supports OFF ROAD vehicle traction when driving on a surface with different grip under the drive wheels or when driving over bumps.

A spinning wheel or wheels are braked earlier and with more force than with the intervention of the standard EDS system.

ABS OFF ROAD

Read and observe and on page 129 first.

The ABS OFF ROAD supports the driver when braking on an unpaved surface such as gravel, snow, etc.

The system generated by a controlled locking of the wheels braked wheel before a "wedge" of piled material, which shortens the braking distance.

The system is only available, if the front wheels are in the straight-ahead position.

The system operates at speeds of up to 50 km/h.

Start-Off Assistant [1]

Read and observe and on page 129 first.

The Start-Off assistant assists the driver when setting off, such as on a steep slope or on a slippery surface. When the driver presses the accelerator, the maximum engine speed is electronically limited so that a gentle approach is possible.

Parking assistance (ParkPilot)

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

The parking aid (hereinafter referred to as system) draws attention via acoustic signals or the Infotainment display when manoeuvring around obstacles in the vicinity of the vehicle.

WARNING

- The general information relating to the use of assistance systems must be observed » page 127, in section *Introduction*.
- Moving persons or objects may not be recognized by the system sensors.
- Under certain circumstances, surfaces of certain objects and types of clothing cannot reflect the system signals. For this reason, such people or objects may not be recognised by the system sensors.

WARNING (Continued)

- External noise sources may affect the signals of the system sensors. Under adverse conditions, this may cause objects or people not to be recognised by the system.
- Before reversing, you should make sure that there are no small obstacles, such as rocks, thin posts, trailer drawbars etc. in front or behind your vehicle. Such obstacles may not be recognised by the system sensors.

CAUTION

- Keep the system sensors » Fig. 143 *on page 131* clean, snow-and ice-free and do not cover with any objects of any kind, otherwise the system functioning may be impaired.
- Under adverse weather conditions (heavy rain, water vapour, very low or high temperatures, etc.), the system function may be limited - "incorrect recognition of obstacle".
- Accessories additionally installed on the vehicle rear, such as bicycle carriers, can impair the system function.

Function

Fig. 143 **Installation position of the sensors on the left side of the vehicle: front/rear**

[1] Only for vehicles with a petrol engine and manual transmission.

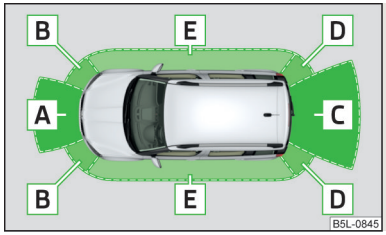

Fig. 144
Sampled areas and range of the sensors

Read and observe ! and ! on page 131 first.

The system uses ultrasound waves to calculate the distance between the bumper and an obstacle. The ultrasonic sensors are, depending on vehicle equipment, located in the back or in the front bumper » Fig. 143.

Depending on the equipment, the following system versions can exist » Fig. 144.
- Version 1: warns of obstacles in the areas C, D.
- Version 2: warns of obstacles in the regions A, B, C, D.
- Version 3: warns of obstacles in the regions A, B, C, D, E.

Approximate range of sensors (in cm)

Area » Fig. 144	Version 1 (4 sensors)	Version 2 (8 sensors)	Version 3 (12 sensors)
A	-	120	120
B	-	60	60
C	160	160	160
D	60	60	60
E	-	-	60

Audible signals
The interval between the acoustic signals becomes shorter as the clearance is reduced. A continuous tone sounds from a distance of approx. 30 cm - danger area. **From this moment on do not continue driving!**

Towing a trailer
When towing, or when another accessory is connected to the trailer socket only the areas A and B » Fig. 144 are active in the system.

Note
- If with **Version 3** vehicles not all fields around the vehicle are active after activation the vehicle should be moved forwards or backwards.
- The signal tones for front obstacle recognition are factory-set to be higher than for rear obstacle recognition.
- The sound of the park-assist can be adjusted via the MAXI DOT display in the **Assistants** menu option » page 47.

Display in the Infotainment display

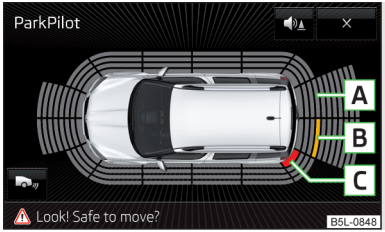

Fig. 145
Display

Read and observe ! and ! on page 131 first.

Function keys and obstacle warning » Fig. 145

Change to rear-view camera display .

✖ Switching off park assistant display.

/ Switching audible parking signals on/off.

⚠ Message: **Look! Safe to move?**

A An area without detected obstacles is shown as a transparent segment.

B An obstacle which is currently outside of the collision area is shown by the yellow segment.

C An obstacle in the collision zone is shown as an orange-coloured segment.

STOP Stop driving in the direction of an obstacle!

Activation/deactivation

Fig. 146
System key (option 2, 3)

Read and observe ! and ! on page 131 first.

Activation
The activation of the system is initiated when the reverse gear is engaged, or vehicles with the **Variant 2 and 3** , also by pressing the symbol key P
» Fig. 146.

This is confirmed by a short acoustic signal (the symbol P in the button is lit).

Deactivation
On vehicles with **Version 1**, the system can be deactivated by moving out of reverse gear.

For vehicles with the **Version 2 and 3** the system is automatically deactivated by pressing the symbol key Por at a speed over 15 km / h (the symbol Pin the button goes out).

Fault display
If a warning signal sounds for about 3 seconds after activating the system and there is no obstacle close to your car, this indicates a system fault. The fault is also indicated by the symbol P flashing in the button. Seek help from a specialist garage.

Note
The system can only be activated with the symbol key Pat a speed of below 15 km / hr.

Rear View Camera

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

The rear view camera (hereinafter referred to as system) helps the driver when parking and manoeuvring by displaying the area behind the vehicle in the Infotainment display (hereinafter referred to as display).

WARNING

- The general information relating to the use of assistance systems must be observed » page 127, ! in section *Introduction*.
- Make sure that the camera lens is not dirty or covered, otherwise the system function can be significantly impaired. For information on cleaning » page 156, *Camera lens*

CAUTION

- The camera lens distorts and enlarges the field of view of the difference in eye sight. The display is therefore only of limited use for estimating distances to following vehicles.
- Some items, such as thin columns, chain link fences or lattice may not be represented adequately in terms of display resolution.
- It is only a two-dimensional display. Therefore, protruding objects or roadway depressions, for example, may not be recognised due to lack of space depth.
- In a crash or damage the vehicle's rear camera can possibly deviate from the correct position. If this is the case, have the sensor checked by a specialist garage.

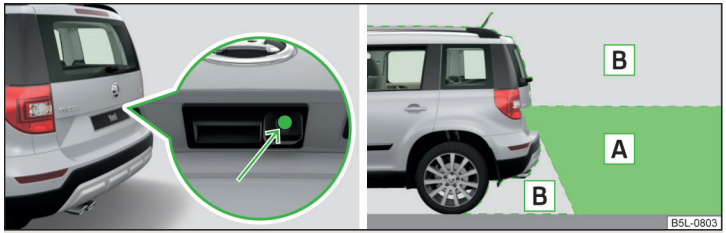

Fig. 147 **Position of the camera / monitored area**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 133 first.

The camera for capturing the area behind the vehicle is in the grip of the boot lid » Fig. 147.

Supervised area » Fig. 147

A Detection range of the camera.
B Area outside the detection range of the camera.

The area behind the vehicle is displayed when the following conditions are met.

✓ The ignition is switched on.
✓ Reverse gear is engaged.[1)]
✓ The luggage compartment lid is completely closed.
✓ The vehicle is not travelling at more than about 15 km/h.

Note

▪ The display can be interrupted by pressing the symbol key P » Fig. 144 *on page 132*.
▪ After disengaging the reverse gear, automatic display of the parking aid is carried out (variant 2, 3) » page 131.

[1)] The area behind the vehicle can be displayed for a few seconds more after disengaging the reverse gear.

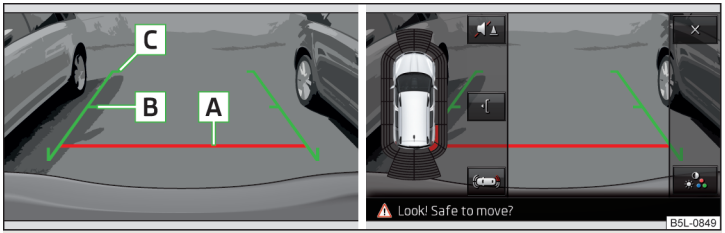

Fig. 148 **Infotainment display: Orientation lines / function keys**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 133 first.

Orientation lines are shown along with the monitored area behind the vehicle in the display.

Distance of the orientation lines behind the vehicle » Fig. 148

A The distance is about 40 cm (safety distance limit).
B The distance is approximately 100 cm.
C The distance is approximately 200 cm.

The distance between the side lines corresponds approximately to the vehicle width including mirrors.

Function keys » Fig. 148

✖ Turns off the display of the area behind the vehicle.
Display settings - brightness, contrast, colour.
/ Switching audible parking signals on/off.
/ Switching reduced park assistance display on / off.
Change to park assistance display.

CAUTION

The objects shown in the display can be closer or even further away than they appear. This is especially the case in the following situations.
▪ Protruding objects, such as a hitch, the rear of a truck and the like.
▪ When driving from a horizontal surface into a slope or a depression.
▪ When driving from a slope or a depression onto a horizontal surface.

Note

- The orientation lines are immobile, and therefore the spacing of the bars behind the vehicle will vary, depending on the vehicle load state and the road inclination.
- If reduced park assistance display is switched off the acoustic signal cannot be turned off with the button .

Park Assist

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Park Assist (hereinafter referred to as system) helps drivers park in suitable parallel and perpendicular parking places or also to manoeuvre out of parallel parking spaces.

The system takes over the steering movements when parking or leaving a parking space. The driver operates the pedals and the shift lever or gear selector.

The state in which the steering wheel is operated by the system, is referred to as **parking operation.**

The Park Assist is an extension of the parking aid » page 131 and operates on the basis of data collected by the ultrasonic sensors.

For this reason, the chapter on the parking aid is to be read carefully and the safety notes are to be observed.

WARNING

- The general information relating to the use of assistance systems must be observed » page 127, in section *Introduction*.
- During the parking process, the system automatically performs rapid steering movements. While it is doing so, do not place your hands between the steering wheel – risk of injury!
- During a parking manoeuvre on loose or slippery surfaces (gravel, snow, ice, etc.) you may stray from the calculated road. Therefore we suggest that you do not use the system in such situations.

CAUTION

The correct evaluation of the parking space and the parking procedure depends on the circumference of the wheels on the vehicle.

- The system only works correctly if the vehicle is fitted with the wheel size approved by the manufacturer.
- Abstain from using the system when the vehicle is fitted with snow chains or a temporary spare wheel.
- If wheels other than those approved by the manufacturer are mounted, the resulting position of the vehicle in the parking space can differ slightly. This can be avoided by readjusting the system at a specialist garage.

CAUTION

If other vehicles are parked behind the kerb or on it, the system can also guide your vehicle beyond the kerb or onto it. Ensure that the wheels or the wheel rims of your vehicle are not damaged and if necessary intervene in time.

Note

- We recommend performing the parking at a safe speed to about 5 km / h.
- The driver can stop the parking process at any time by pressing the symbol key » Fig. 149 *on page 136* or by a driver steering intervention.

Functioning

Read and observe and on page 135 first.

The system support is provided in the following manner.

- While the parking space search is going on, a measurement and evaluation of the parking space size is completed.
- Suitable parking spaces are shown in the display of the instrument cluster (hereinafter only in the display).

▸ The display shows instructions and information before the start and during the parking.
▸ The road way is calculated that the vehicle uses during the parking.
▸ The front wheels are automatically rotated during the parking.

Conditions for the system function
The system can look for a parking space only if the following basic conditions are met.

✓ The system is activated.
✓ The vehicle speed is less than 40 km / h (parallel parking).
✓ The vehicle speed is less than 20 km / h (transverse parking).
✓ The distance to a number of parked vehicles is approximately 0.5 - 1.5 m.
✓ The TCS is activated » page 127, *Braking and stabilisation systems*.

The system can only carry out the parking if the following basic conditions are met.

✓ The vehicle is travelling less than about 7 km/h.
✓ The parking procedure takes less than 6 minutes.
✓ There is no driver intervention in the automatic steering operation.

Activation/deactivation
The system can be enabled or disabled by pressing the symbol key P » Fig. 149 *on page 136* - A.

When the system is activated, the symbol P illuminates.

Parking space search

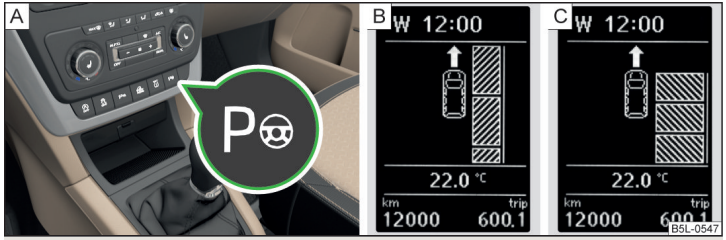

Fig. 149 **System button / display**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 135 first.

The system is able to find a parking space in a number of parallel and transverse parked vehicles on the passenger's or driver's side.

Search for a parking space parallel to the roadway
› Slowly drive past a row of parallel parked vehicles.
› Press the symbol button**once** P » Fig. 149 - A.

The display shows the following » Fig. 149 - B.

Search for a parking space traverse to the roadway
› Slowly drive past a row of traverse parked vehicles.
› Press the symbol button**twice** P » Fig. 149 - A.

The display shows the following » Fig. 149 - C.

Change sides for the parking
The system will automatically search for a parking space on the passenger side.

Activate the turn signal on the driver's side if you wish to look fro a parking space on this side of the road. The display changes and the system searches for a parking space on the driver's side.

Note
If the symbol (km / h) is shown in the display while you are looking for a parking space, the vehicle speed should be reduced below 40 km / hr (parallel parking) or below 20 km / hr (Transverse parking).

Parking

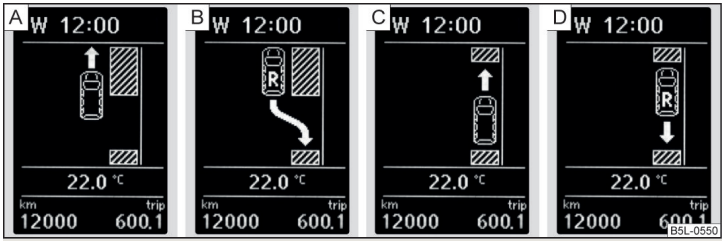

Fig. 150 **Display**

Read and observe and on page 135 first.

The system supports the driver when reverse parking in the parking space found in a number of traverse and parallel parked vehicles.

Display » Fig. 150

A Parking place recognised with the information to drive on.

B Parking space recognised with the information to reverse.

C Note to drive on to the parking space.

D Note to reverse to the parking space.

Parking manoeuvre

If the system finds a parking space, then this parking space is displayed » Fig. 150 - A.

› Continue driving forwards until the display appears » Fig. 150 - B.
› Stop and ensure that the vehicle does not continue to move forward until the parking procedure starts.
› Select reverse gear or move the selector lever into position **R**.
› As soon as the following message is shown in the display: **Steering int. active. Monitor area around veh.!**, let go of the steering wheel. The steering will be taken over by the system.
› Observe the direct vicinity of the vehicle and reverse carefully.

If necessary, the parking procedure can be continued with further steps.

› If the arrow in the display is flashing to the front » Fig. 150 C, engage 1st gear or move the selector lever into the position **D**.

The display shows the icon (brake pedal).

› Depress the brake pedal and wait until the steering wheel automatically rotates into the required position, the symbol goes out.
› Carefully drive forwards.
› If the backwards arrow is flashing in the display » Fig. 150 - D, select reverse gear again or move the selector lever into position **R** .

The display shows the icon (brake pedal).

› Depress the brake pedal and wait until the steering wheel automatically rotates into the required position, the symbol goes out.
› Carefully move backwards.

You can repeat these steps several times in succession.

As soon as the parking procedure is completed, an audible signal sounds and the following message appears in the display: **Park Assist ended. Take over steering!**

Departing from a parallel parking space

Read and observe and on page 135 first.

The system supports the driver when leaving a parking space of a parallel parking space.

Leaving a parking space process

› Press the symbol button**once** » Fig. 149 *on page 136* .

The following message is displayed: **PARK ASSIST Turn on turn signal and select reverse gear.**

› Activate the turn signal for side of the vehicle where the parking space is out of which you wish to manoeuvre.
› Select reverse gear or move the selector lever into position **R**.

The further procedure is analogous to that for reverse parking.

› Follow the system instructions shown in the display.

As soon as the parking procedure is completed, an audible signal sounds and the following message appears in the information display: **Take over steering and continue driving.**

Automatic brake assist

Read and observe ! and ! on page 135 first.

Automatic brake assist when speeding
If a velocity of 7 km / h is exceeded during the parking manoeuvre for the first time, the speed will be automatically reduced by the system to less than 7 km / h. This prevents the parking manoeuvre from aborting.

Automatic emergency braking
If the system detects a risk of collision during parking, automatic emergency braking takes place to prevent a collision.

The parking is terminated by the emergency braking.

! CAUTION
The automatic emergency braking is not triggered by the system when the parking process stops due to the speed of 7 km / hr being exceeded!

Information messages

Read and observe ! and ! on page 135 first.

The warning symbols are shown in the instrument cluster display.

Park Assist: speed too high.

If a speed of 50 km / h is exceeded while searching for a parking space, the system with the key symbol is P must be reactivated.

Speed too high. Please take over steering!

The parking is terminated if the speed exceeds 7 km / hr.

Driver steering intervention: Please take over steering!

The parking procedure is terminated due to a driver steering intervention.

Park Assist finished. ASR deactivated.

The parking procedure cannot be carried out because the TCS system is deactivated » page 127, *Braking and stabilisation systems*. Activate the TCS.

ASR deactivated. Please take over steering!

The parking procedure was ended because TCS was deactivated during the parking procedure.

Trailer: Park Assist finished.

The parking process cannot be performed with a trailer or when another accessory is connected to the trailer socket.

Time limit exceeded. Please take over steering!

The parking procedure was ended because the time limit of 6 minutes was passed.

Park Assist currently not available.

The system cannot be activated because a fault exists on the vehicle. Seek help from a specialist garage.

Park Assist ended. System currently not available.

The parking procedure was ended because a fault exists on the vehicle. Seek help from a specialist garage.

Park Assist faulty. Workshop!

The parking procedure is not possible because a fault exists in the system. Seek help from a specialist garage.

ASR intervention! Please take over steering!

The parking procedure is terminated by a TCS intervention.

Automatic space departure not possible. Space too small.

The manoeuvring procedure using the system is not possible. The parking gap is too small.

Park Assist: Brake interv. Speed too high.

The speed was too high during the parking and was automatically reduced.

Speed control system

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

The Cruise Control System (CCS) maintains a set speed without you having to actuate the accelerator pedal.

The state where the GRA maintains the speed is referred to hereinafter as the **control**.

WARNING

The general information relating to the use of assistance systems must be observed » page 127, ! in section *Introduction*.

Functioning

Read and observe ! on page 139 first.

Basic requirements for start of control

✓ The GRA is activated.
✓ On vehicles with a **manual transmission**, the second gear or higher is engaged.
✓ On vehicles with an **automatic transmission**, the selector lever is in the **D**, **S** position or in the Tiptronic position.
✓ The current speed is higher than approx. 20 km/h.

This is only possible within the range which is permitted by the power output and braking power of the engine.

WARNING

If the engine power and engine braking effect is insufficient to maintain the set speed, vehicle operation must be taken over!

Operating Description

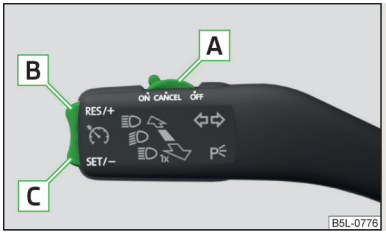

Fig. 151
Cruise control system controls

Read and observe ! on page 139 first.

Overview of the control elements of the CCS » Fig. 151

A	OFF	Deactivate CCS (delete set speed)
	CANCEL	Interrupt control (sprung position)
	ON	Activate CCS (control deactivated)
B	RES/+	Take control again[a] / Increase speed
C	SET/–	Launch control / reduce speed

[a] If no speed is set the current speed is adopted.

After the start of the regulation, the GRA regulates the vehicle to the current speed and the warning light illuminates in the instrument cluster.

After the interruption in control, the stored speed can be resumed by pressing the B button.

Automatic control interruption

Automatic control interruption occurs if any of the following conditions are met.

- By pressing the brake or clutch pedal.
- When one of the brake assist systems (e.g. ESC) intervenes.
- Through an airbag deployment.

WARNING

- Always deactivate the cruise control system after use to prevent the system being switched on unintentionally.
- Control may only be resumed if the set speed is not too high for the current traffic conditions.

Note

During control, speed can be increased by pressing the accelerator pedal. Releasing the accelerator pedal will cause the speed to drop again to the set speed.

Fatigue detection

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

The fatigue detection system (hereinafter referred to as system) recommends the driver takes a break from driving when driver fatigue can be detected due to the driver's steering behaviour.

WARNING

- The general information relating to the use of assistance systems must be observed » page 127, ! in section *Introduction*.
- For the driving ability is always the driver's responsibility. Never drive if you feel tired.
- The system may not detect all cases where a break is needed.
- Therefore, take regular, sufficient breaks during long trips.
- There will be no system warning during the so-called micro-sleep.

Note

- In some situations, the system may evaluate the driving incorrectly and thus mistakenly recommend a break (e.g. sporty driving, adverse weather conditions or poor road conditions).
- The system is designed primarily for use on motorways.

Function

Read and observe ! on page 140 first.

From the start of the journey, the system evaluates steering behaviour. If, while driving, there have been changes in the steering behaviours that are evaluated by the system as indicating possible fatigue, a break recommendation is issued.

The system evaluates steering behaviour and recommends a break at speeds of 65-200 km / h.

The system detects a break from driving when one of the following conditions is met.

- ▸ The vehicle is stopped and the ignition switched off.
- ▸ The vehicle is stopped, the seat belt removed and the driver's door opened.
- ▸ The vehicle is stopped for more than 15 minutes.

If none of these conditions are met or if the driving style is not changed, the system recommends a driving break again after 15 minutes.

Activation/deactivation

The system can be activated/deactivated via the MAXI DOT display in the **Assistants** menu option » page 44.

Information messages

Read and observe ! on page 140 first.

In MAXI DOT display the icon appears for a few seconds and the following message.

Driver alert. Take a break!

An audible signal is also emitted.

Tyre pressure monitoring

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

The tyre pressure monitoring function (hereinafter referred to as the system) monitors the tyre pressure while driving.

If the rolling circumference of a wheel is changed, the warning light in the instrument cluster lights up and an audible signal sounds.

Information on the procedure for the notification of change of tyre inflation pressure » page 38.

The system can only function properly if the tyres have the prescribed inflation pressure and these pressure values are stored in the system.

WARNING

- The general information relating to the use of assistance systems must be observed » page 127, ! in section *Introduction*.
- Having the correct tyre inflation pressure is always the driver's responsibility. Tyre pressure should be checked regularly » page 176.
- The system cannot warn in case of very rapid tyre inflation pressure loss, e.g. in case of sudden tyre damage.

Save tyre pressure values

Fig. 152
Key for storing the pressure values

Read and observe ! on page 140 first.

Procedure for storing the tyre pressure values
› Inflate all the tyres to the specified pressure.
› Switch on the ignition.
› Press SET » Fig. 152 and hold it down.

The warning light (!) in the instrument cluster lights up.

An acoustic signal and the control indicator provide information about the storage of the tyre pressure values.

› Release the SET Release the symbol key.

Always save the tyre pressure values in the system if one of the following events occurs.
▸ Change of tyre inflation pressure.
▸ Change one or more wheels.
▸ Change in position of a wheel on the vehicle.
▸ Illumination of the warning light (!) in the instrument cluster.

! WARNING

Before storing the pressures, the tyres must be inflated to the specified inflation pressure » page 176. If the wrong pressure valuesare stored, the system may not issue any warnings, even if the tyre pressure is too low.

! CAUTION

Save the tyre pressure values every 10,000 km or 1x annually to ensure correct system functioning.

Hitch and trailer

Hitch

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

The maximum trailer drawbar load is **80 kg/h**.

On vehicles with four-wheel drive and the 2.0 l / 103 kW TDI CR or 2.0 L / 110 kW TDI CR engine, the maximum trailer nose weight is **85 kg** .

The draw bar load information on the type plate of the towing device is merely a test value for the towing device. The vehicle-specific information is detailed in the vehicle documents.

! WARNING

▪ Check that the tow bar is seated correctly and is secured in the mounting recess before the start of every journey.
▪ Do not use the ball head, if it is not correctly inserted into the mounting recess and secured.
▪ Do not use the towing equipment if it is damaged or incomplete.
▪ Do not modify or adapt the towing device in any way.
▪ Keep the mounting recess of the towing equipment clean at all times. Such dirt prevents the ball head from being attached securely.

! CAUTION

▪ Take care with the ball bar - risk of paint damage to the bumper.
▪ Always attach the cap to the receiving shaft when the ball bar is removed - risk of receiving-shaft contamination.

Note

- Operation and maintenance of towing equipment » page 157.
- The towing vehicle by means of the detachable ball rod » page 192.

Description

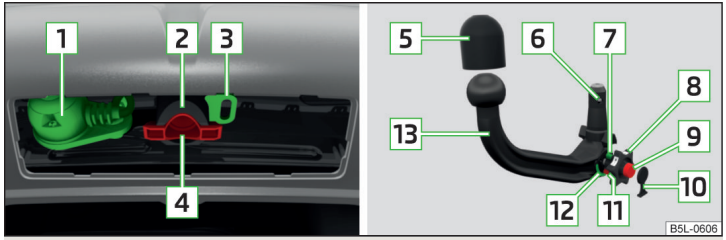

Fig. 153 **Carrier for the towing device/tow bar**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 141 first.

The ball head can be removed and is kept in the spare wheel well or in a compartment for the spare wheel in the luggage compartment.

Support for the towing device and tow bar » Fig. 153

1 13-pin power socket
2 Mounting recess
3 Safety eyelet
4 Cover for the mounting recess
5 Dust cap
6 Locking ball
7 Green marking on the handwheel
8 Handwheel
9 Key
10 Lock cap
11 Red marking on the handwheel
12 Green box on the tow bar
13 Tow ball

Note

On the bottom of the key is a code number. We advise you to write it down. If you lose a key, please contact a specialist garage, who will be able to use this code number to provide you with a new one.

Adjusting the ready position

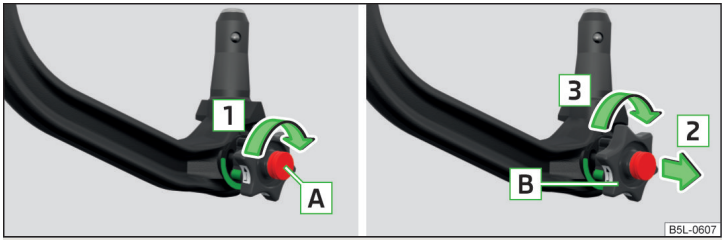

Fig. 154 **Lock unlock / pull out hand wheel and turn**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 141 first.

The tow bar must be set to the ready position prior to installation» page 143, *Correctly set ready position*.

If not in the ready position, it must be set to the ready position as follows.

› Grip the tow bar below the protective cap.
› Remove the cap from the lock.
› Insert the key into the hand wheel lock.
› Turn the key A in direction of the arrow 1 to the stop » Fig. 154.
› Pull the handwheel B in the direction of the arrow 2 and drag in the direction of the arrow 3 to the stop.

The hand wheel B remains locked in this position.

Correctly set ready position

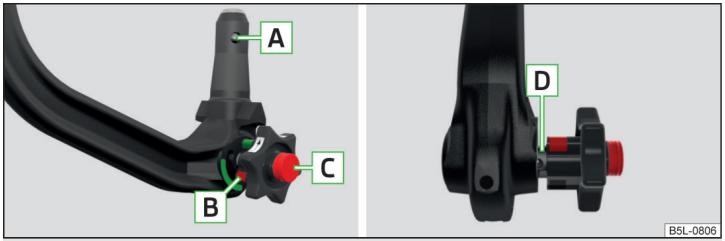

Fig. 155 **Ready position**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 141 first.

Correctly adjusted standby position » Fig. 155

- ✓ The locking balls A can be pushed fully into the tow bar.
- ✓ The red marking B on the hand wheel is located in the green box on the tow bar.
- ✓ The key C is in the unlocked position and cannot be removed.
- ✓ There is a clear gap of approx. 5 mm D between the hand wheel and the tow bar.

The ball bar is thus set ready for installation.

! CAUTION

When in the ready position, the key cannot be removed from the handwheel lock.

Installing the ball rod

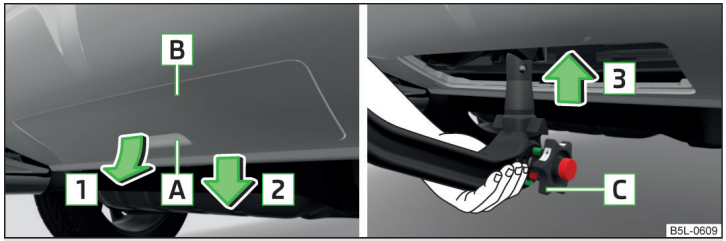

Fig. 156 **Removing the cap on the rear bumper/inserting the tow bar**

Fig. 157 **Locking the lock and removing the key/replacing the lock cap**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 141 first.

- › Grip the cap on the rear bumper B » Fig. 156 at the handle A, release in the direction of the arrow 1 and remove in the direction of the arrow 2.
- › Remove the cover for the mounting recess 4 » Fig. 153 *on page 142* in a downwards direction.
- › Put the tow bar in the ready position » page 142.
- › Grip the tow bar **from underneath** » Fig. 156 and insert into the mounting recess in arrow direction 3 until you hear it click into place » !.

The handwheel C » Fig. 156 returns **automatically** and rests on the tow bar » !.

› Lock the handwheel lock by turning the key D » Fig. 157 to the left in the direction of the arrow 4 to the stop, and remove the key in the direction of the arrow 5.
› Put the cap E onto the handwheel lock in the direction of the arrow 6 » !.
› Check that the tow bar is securely attached » page 144.

! WARNING

▪ When attaching the tow bar, do not hold the handwheel by hand - risk of injuring fingers!
▪ When removing the cover for the mounting recess, watch out for your hand coming into contact with the opening of the bumper - risk of injuring hand!
▪ After fitting the tow bar, always secure the lock and remove the key.

! CAUTION

▪ When removing the cover on the rear bumper, please note that there is a risk of paint damage to the bumper or cover.
▪ After removing the key, **always** replace the cover on the handwheel lock – risk of lock getting dirty.
▪ If the tow bar is not in the ready position, it cannot be fitted in the mounting recess.

i Note

Store the cover for the rear bumper and the cover for the mounting recess in a suitable location in the boot after removal.

Check proper fitting

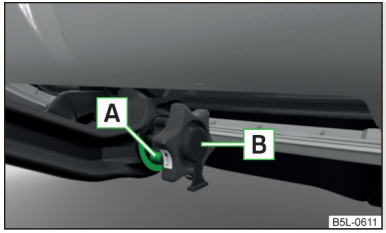

Fig. 158
Correctly secured ball head

Read and observe ! and ! on page 141 first.

Check that the tow bar is fitted properly before each use.

Correctly secured ball head » Fig. 158

✓ The tow bar does not come out of the mounting recess even after heavy "shaking".
✓ The green marking A on the handwheel is located in the green box on the tow bar.
✓ The handwheel lies flush with the tow bar - there is no gap.
✓ The key is removed.
✓ The cover B is attached to the locked handwheel lock.

! WARNING

Do not use the towing equipment unless the ball head has been properly locked – risk of accident.

Removing the ball rod

Fig. 159 **Removing the lock cover/releasing the lock**

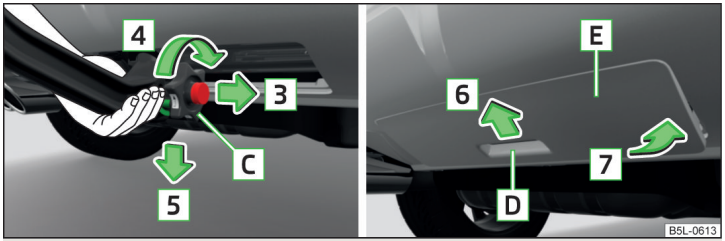

Fig. 160 **Removing the two bar/placing the cover on the rear bumper**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 141 first.

› Remover the cover A from the handwheel lock in the direction of the arrow 1 » Fig. 159.
› Insert the key into the handwheel lock.
› Turn the key B 2 in the direction of the arrow as far as the stop.
› Grip the tow bar **from below** and with the other hand pull the handwheel C in the direction of the arrow 3 » Fig. 160.
› Turn the handwheel in the direction of the arrow 4 **to the stop**, and hold in this position.
› Remove the tow bar from the mounting recess downwards and in the direction of the arrow 5.

At the same time, the tow bar latches into the ready position and is therefore ready to be re-inserted into the mounting recess » !.

› Attach the cover for the mounting recess 4 » Fig. 153 *on page 142* » !.
› Grip the cover on the rear bumper E » Fig. 160 at the handle D and position in the direction of the arrow 6 on the checkmark underneath the upper edge of the bumper.
› Push this cover onto the lower edge and onto the two sides in the direction of the arrow 7.

! WARNING

Never allow the tow bar to remain unsecured in the boot. This could cause damage on sudden braking and could put the safety of the occupants at risk!
- Never remove the tow bar while the trailer is still coupled.

! CAUTION

- If the handwheel is not turned all the way to the stop, then it will return to its initial position when the tow bar is removed, and will rest on the tow bar and not engage into the ready position. The tow bar will then need to be brought into this position before the next time it is fitted.
- The mounting recess must be closed with the cover following removal. This prevents foreign bodies from getting into the mounting recess.

i Note

- We recommend putting the protective cover onto the ball head before removing the tow bar.
- Clean any dirt from the tow bar before stowing it away in the box with the vehicle tool kit.

Mount accessories

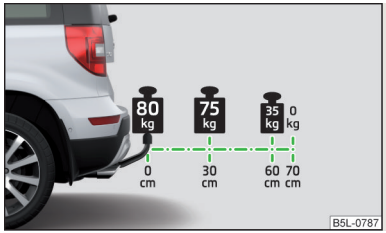

Fig. 161
Illustration of the maximum permissible projection of the ball head of the towing hitch and the permissible total weight of the accessories including the load depending on the load centre-of-gravity.

Read and observe ! and ! on page 141 first.

An accessories can mounted on the ball head of the towing hitch (e.g. bike carriers).

If this accessory is used, the maximum permissible overhang of the ball head of the towing hitch and the permissible gross vehicle weight of the accessories including load are to be checked.

The maximum permissible overhang of the ball head of the towing hitch is **70 cm** » Fig. 161.

The total permitted weight of the accessories including load changes varies as the distance of the centre of gravity of the load from the ball head of the towing hitch increases.

Distance of the centre of gravity of the load from the ball head	Permissible total weight of the accessories, including load
0 cm	80 kg/85 kg[a)]
30 cm	75 kg
60 cm	35 kg
70 cm	0 kg

a) Applies to 4x4 vehicles with the 2.0 l / 103 kW TDI CR and 2.0 L / 110 kW TDI CR engine.

WARNING

- Never exceed the permissible gross weight of the accessory including load – there is a risk of damaging the towing device.
- Never exceed the permissible protrusion of the ball head including towing device – there is a risk of damaging the towing device.

Note

We recommend that you use accessories from ŠKODA Original Accessories.

Trailer

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

The trailer can be hitched to the ball head of the towing device.

Coupling / uncoupling trainer

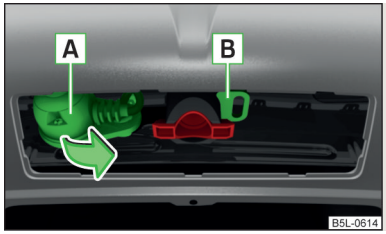

Fig. 162
Swivel out the 13-pin power socket, safety eyelet

Connecting and disconnecting

› Fit the ball bar.
› Swing the 13-pin socket in the direction of arrow A » Fig. 162.
› Lift off protective cap 5 » Fig. 153 *on page 142* .
› Place the trailer onto the ball.
› Plug the trailer cable into the 13-pin socket A » Fig. 162.

If the trailer that is to be towed has a **7-pin connector**, you can use a suitable adapter from ŠKODA Original Accessories to establish a connection to the electricity.

› Hook the breakaway cable of the trailer onto the safety eyelet B.

The breakaway cable of the trailer must **sag** in all trailer positions relative to the vehicle (sharp curves, reversing and the like).

Uncoupling takes place in reverse order.

Exterior mirrors

You should have additional exterior mirrors fitted if you are not able to see the traffic behind the trailer with the standard rear-view mirrors.

Headlights

The front of the vehicle may lift up when a trailer is being towed and the headlights may dazzle other road users.

Adjust the headlights using the headlight beam control » page 64, *Headlight range control* [1)].

1) Applies to vehicles with xenon headlights.

WARNING

- Improperly connected trailer electrical installations may cause accidents or serious injury due to electric shock.
- Work on the electrical system must only be carried out by specialist garages.
- Never directly connect the trailer's electrical system with the electrical connections for the tail lights or other current sources.
- After coupling the trailer and connecting up the power socket, check the rear lights on the trailer to ensure they are working.
- Never use the safety eyelet for towing!

CAUTION

Improperly connected trailer electrical installations may cause malfunction of the entire vehicle electronics.

Loading a trailer

Distribution of the cargo

Distribute the cargo in the trailer in such a way that heavy items are located as close to the trailer axle as possible. Secure the items from slipping.

The distribution of the weight is very poor if your vehicle is unladen and the trailer is laden. Maintain a particularly low speed if you cannot avoid driving with this combination.

Tyre pressure

Correct the tyre inflation pressure on your vehicle for a "full load" » page 176.

WARNING

Sliding cargo can significantly adversely affect stability and driving safety - risk of accident!

Trailer

The permissible trailer load must not be exceeded under any circumstances.

Permissible trailer load

Engine	Transmission	Permissible trailer load, braked (kg)		Permissible trailer load, unbraked (kg)
		Gradients of up to 12%	Gradients of up to 8%	
1.2 ltr./81 kW TSI	MG	1200	1500	670
	DSG	1200	1500	680
1.4 ltr./92 kW TSI	MG	1300	1600	670
	DSG	1300	1600	690
1.4 ltr./110 kW TSI	MG 4x4	1800	1800	730
	DSG 4x4	1800	1800	740
1.6 l./81 kW MPI	MG	-[a)]	-[a)]	-[a)]
	AG	1100	1100	650
1.8 ltr./112 kW TSI	DSG 4x4	1800	1800	750

Engine	Transmission	Permissible trailer load, braked (kg)		Permissible trailer load, unbraked (kg)
		Gradients of up to 12%	Gradients of up to 8%	
2.0 ltr./81 kW TDI CR	MG (EU4, EU5)	1500	1500	700
	MG (EU6)	1500	1500	720
	MG 4x4	1800	1800	750
2.0 ltr./103 kW TDI CR	MG 4x4	2100/2000[b]	2100/2000[b]	750
	DSG 4x4	2100/2000[b]	2100/2000[b]	750
2.0 ltr./110 kW TDI CR	MG	1800	1800	740
	MG 4x4	2100/2000[b]	2100/2000[b]	750
	DSG 4x4	2100/2000[b]	2100/2000[b]	750

[a] The vehicle is not equipped with a towing device.
[b] Applies to vehicles of category AF.

WARNING
Never exceed the maximum permissible axle and drawbar load or the permissible weight of the trailer - risk of accident!

Towing a trailer

Driving speed
For safety reasons, do not drive faster than 80 km/h when towing a trailer.

Immediately reduce your speed as soon as even the slightest swaying of the trailer is detected. Never attempt to stop the trailer from "swaying" by accelerating.

Brakes
Apply the brakes in good time! If the trailer is fitted with a **trailer brake**, apply the brakes gently at first, then brake firmly. This will avoid brake jolts resulting from the trailer wheels locking.

On downhill sections shift down a gear in good time to also use the engine as a brake.

WARNING
Always drive particularly carefully with the trailer.

CAUTION
If you tow a trailer frequently, you should also have your vehicle inspected between service intervals.

Anti-theft alarm system

If the vehicle is locked, the alarm is activated when the electrical connection to the trailer is interrupted.

Always switch off the anti-theft alarm system before a trailer is coupled or uncoupled » page 56.

Conditions for including a trailer in the anti-theft alarm system.
- ✓ The vehicle is factory-fitted with an anti-theft alarm system and towing device.
- ✓ The trailer is electrically connected to the towing vehicle via the trailer socket.
- ✓ The electrical system of the vehicle and trailer is functional.
- ✓ The vehicle is locked and the anti-theft alarm system is activated.

CAUTION
For technical reasons, trailers with rear LED lights cannot be connected to the anti-theft alarm system.

General Maintenance

Care and maintenance

Service work, adjustments and technical alterations

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

The instructions and guidelines from ŠKODA AUTO a.s. must be observed when carrying out any modifications, repairs or technical alterations to your vehicle.

Adhering to these instructions and guidelines helps ensure road safety and helps keep your vehicle in a good technical condition. After carrying out modifications, repairs or technical alterations, the vehicle will comply with German road transport regulations (StVO).

Always consult a ŠKODA Partner » page 150 before buying accessories or parts, or before carrying out any modifications, repairs or technical alterations to your vehicle.

WARNING

- Work on your vehicle, which have been carried out unprofessionally, can cause operational faults – risk of accident!
- Interference on the electronic components and their software can lead to operational faults. This interference can also impair not directly affected systems because of the networking of the electronic components. The operational safety of the vehicle may be at significant risk and can lead to increased wear of parts.

For the sake of the environment

Technical documents regarding alterations carried out on the vehicle must be kept by the vehicle user in order to be handed over to the recyclers at a later date. This ensures that the vehicle is recycled in an environmentally sound manner.

Note

- We recommend only having these modifications, repairs and technical changes performed by a specialist garage.
- Any damage caused by technical alterations made without the approval of the manufacturer is excluded from the warranty » *Service schedule*.
- The ŠKODA Partner accepts no liability for products that have not been approved by ŠKODA AUTO a.s. even though these may be products with an operational approval or that have been approved by a government testing institute.
- We advise you only to use ŠKODA Original Accessories and ŠKODA Original Parts which have been expressly approved for use on your vehicle. Reliability, safety and suitability for your vehicle are guaranteed with these.
- ŠKODA Original Accessories and ŠKODA Original Parts can be purchased from ŠKODA Partners, who will also perform the professional assembly of the purchased parts.

Vehicle operating under different weather conditions

Read and observe ! on page 149 first.

If you would like to operate your vehicle in countries other than those with its intended weather conditions, you should contact a ŠKODA Partner.

She will advise you if certain precautions need to be taken to ensure the full functioning of the vehicle and to prevent damage.

This involves, for example, the coolant, battery replacement and the like.

Statutory checks

Read and observe ! on page 149 first.

Many countries have legislation requiring the operational reliability and road worthiness and/or exhaust gas properties of a vehicle to be tested at specific intervals. These tests can be carried out by workshops or testing stations that have been legally authorized for this purpose.

The ŠKODA Service Partners are up-to-date on the legally required tests and will prepare the vehicle for the tests as part of a service operation if required, or will be responsible for carrying out these tests. The specialist garages can carry out the specified tests directly if required by the customer if they are authorised to do so. This saves you time and money.

Even if you want to take your vehicle to an officially approved test centre for prior checking in preparation of a legally required test, we recommend that you consult the service consultant of your ŠKODA Service Partner beforehand.

Based on their appraisal, the service consultant will tell you which areas you should focus on in order to ensure that your vehicle will pass the technical test without any problems. This allows you to avoid additional expenses resulting from a possible subsequent test.

ŠKODA Service Partners

Read and observe ! on page 149 first.

ŠKODA Service Partners feature modern, specially developed tools and equipment. Here, trained specialists have access to a comprehensive range of ŠKODA Original Parts and ŠKODA Original Accessories for carrying out modifications, repairs and technical alterations.

All ŠKODA service partners operate according to the most recent guidelines and instructions from ŠKODA AUTO a.s. All service and repair work is therefore carried out on time and at the appropriate quality. Adhering to these instructions and guidelines helps ensure road safety and helps keep your vehicle in a good technical condition.

ŠKODA Service Partners are therefore properly prepared to service your vehicle and to provide quality work. We therefore advise you to have all modifications, repairs and technical alterations to your vehicle carried out by a ŠKODA Service Partner.

ŠKODA Original parts

Read and observe ! on page 149 first.

We recommend the use of ŠKODA Genuine Parts for your vehicle, as these parts are approved by ŠKODA AUTO a.s.. They correspond precisely to the ŠKODA AUTO a.s. regulations with regard to design, dimensional accuracy and material, and are identical to the components used in series production.

ŠKODA AUTO a.s. is able to vouch for the safety, suitability and long service life of these products. We therefore recommend that you only use ŠKODA Genuine Parts.

ŠKODA AUTO a.s. supplies the market with a complete range of ŠKODA Genuine Parts - not only while the model is still in production but for at least 15 years after the end of series production for wear parts and at least 10 years after the end of series production for all other vehicle parts.

ŠKODA Service Partners are liable for any defects of ŠKODA Genuine Parts for a period of 2 years after sale in accordance with the materials defect liability, unless agreed otherwise in the purchase agreement. You should keep the approved warranty certificate and the invoices for these components for this period of time, so that the commencement of the term can be verified.

Body repairs

ŠKODA vehicles are designed such that if any damage occurs to the body, it is only necessary to replace those parts that are actually damaged.

However, before you decide to have damaged body parts replaced, you should first of all contact your specialist garage to determine whether or not the parts can also be repaired. Repairs to body parts are usually cheaper.

ŠKODA Original accessories

Read and observe ! on page 149 first.

If you wish to fit accessories to your vehicle, you should remember the following:

We recommend that you use ŠKODA Genuine Accessories in your vehicle. ŠKODA AUTO a.s. has selected these accessories to ensure that they are reliable, safe and suitable for your particular vehicle. Although we constantly monitor the market, we are not able to assess or vouch for other products even though in some instances such parts may have operational approval or may have been approved by a nationally recognised testing laboratory.

All accessory products are subjected to a challenging process in the areas of technical development (technical testing) and quality inspection (customer testing), and the product only becomes a ŠKODA Genuine Accessory if all tests are passed.

Our ŠKODA Genuine Accessories service also includes expert advice and professional fitting if required by the customer.

ŠKODA Service Partners are liable for any defects of ŠKODA Genuine Accessories for a period of 2 years after installation or delivery in accordance with the materials defect liability, unless agreed otherwise in the purchase agreement or any other agreements. You should keep the approved warranty certificate and the invoices for these accessories for this period of time, so that the commencement of the term can be verified.

ŠKODA Service Partners also stock a range of suitable car care products and all parts that are subject to natural wear-and-tear, such as tyres, batteries, bulbs and wiper blades.

Note

The accessories authorized by the company ŠKODA AUTO a.s. will be offered by the ŠKODA Partners in all countries where the company ŠKODA AUTO a.s. has a sales and after-sales service network. This will usually be in the form of a printed catalogue of ŠKODA Genuine Accessories, in the form of separate printed brochures or in the form of ŠKODA Genuine Accessories on the ŠKODA Partner websites.

Spoiler

Read and observe ! on page 149 first.

If your new vehicle is fitted with a spoiler on the front bumper in combination with the spoiler on the luggage compartment lid, the following instructions must be adhered to.

- For safety reasons, the vehicle must only be fitted with a spoiler on the front bumper in combination with the associated spoiler on the luggage compartment lid.
- This kind of spoiler cannot be left on the front bumper either on its own, in combination with another spoiler not on the luggage compartment lid or in combination with an unsuitable spoiler on the luggage compartment lid.
- We recommend that you consult the ŠKODA Service Partner for any repairs to or replacement, addition or removal of spoilers.

WARNING

- If work on your vehicle's spoilers is not carried out properly, this can lead to operational faults - risk of accident and serious injuries.
- If a front spoiler, full wheel trim, etc. is mounted retrospectively, it must be ensured that the air supply to the front wheel brakes is not reduced. The front brakes may overheat which can have a negative impact on the functioning of the braking system – risk of accident!

Component protection

Read and observe ! on page 149 first.

Some electronic vehicle components (such as the instrument cluster) are factory-equipped with component protection.

Component protection has been developed as a protection mechanism for the following situations.

- Impairment of factory- or garage-fitted electronic components after installation in another vehicle (for example, after a theft).
- Impairment of electronic components used outside the vehicle.
- The possibility of a legitimate installation or change of electronic components for repairs at a specialist garage.

The activated component protection can be realized by functional limitations of the specific electronic component. Seek help from a specialist garage.

Airbags

Read and observe ! on page 149 first.

WARNING

- Modifications, repairs and technical alterations that have been carried out unprofessionally can cause damage and operational faults, and can also seriously impair the effectiveness of the airbag system – risk of accident and fatal injury!
- A change to the vehicle's wheel suspension, including the use of non-approved wheels and tire combinations, can alter the functioning of the airbag system - risk of accident and fatal injury!

WARNING

Information on the use of the airbag system

- Never install any airbag parts into the vehicle that have been removed from old cars or have been recycled.
- Never install damaged airbag parts in the vehicle. The airbags may then not be deployed properly or even at all in the event of an accident.

WARNING

- No modifications of any kind must be made to parts of the airbag system.
- Any work on the airbag system including the installation and removal of system components due to other repair work (e.g. removal of the steering wheel) must only be carried out by a specialist garage.
- Never make any changes to the front bumper or the bodywork.
- It is prohibited to manipulate individual parts of the airbag system, as this might result in the airbag being deployed.
- The protective function of the airbag system is sufficient for only one accident. The airbag system must then be replaced if the airbag has been deployed.

WARNING

The airbag system operates using pressure sensors located in the front doors. For this reason, no adjustments may be carried out to the doors or door panels (e.g. installation of additional loudspeakers). Resulting damage can have a negative impact on the function of the airbag system. Any work on the front doors and their door panels must be carried out by a specialist garage. The following guidelines must be observed.

- Never drive with inner door panels removed.
- Never drive if parts of the inner door panel have been removed and the resulting openings have not been properly sealed.
- Never drive if the loudspeakers in the doors have been removed, unless the loudspeaker openings have been properly sealed.
- Always make sure that the openings are covered or filled if additional loudspeakers or other equipment parts have been installed in the inner door panels.

Acceptance and recycling of used vehicles

Read and observe ! on page 149 first.

ŠKODA meets the requirements of the brand and its products with regard to protecting the environment and the preserving resources.

Note

You can find more detailed information about the trade-in and recycling of old cars from a specialist garage.

Washing vehicle

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

The best way to protect your vehicle against harmful environmental influences is **frequent** washing.

The longer insect residues, bird droppings, road salt and other aggressive deposits remain on the paintwork of your vehicle, the more detrimental their destructive effect can be. High temperatures, such as those caused by intensive sun's rays, accentuate this caustic effect.

It is essential to also thoroughly clean the **underside of the vehicle** at the end of the winter.

WARNING

When washing your vehicle in the winter: Water and ice in the braking system can affect the braking efficiency – risk of accident!

CAUTION

The temperature of the water used for cleaning must not exceed 60 °C – risk of damaging the vehicle.

For the sake of the environment

Only wash the vehicle at washing bays intended for this purpose.

Washing by hand

Read and observe ! and ! on page 152 first.

Soak the dirt with plenty of water and rinse as well as possible.

Clean the vehicle with a soft **sponge**, a **washing glove** or a washing brush. Work from the top to the bottom - starting with the roof.

For stubborn dirt, agents specifically intended for this purpose are to be used.

Wash out the sponge or washing glove thoroughly at short intervals.

Clean wheels, door sills and similar parts last. Use a second sponge for such areas.

Give the vehicle a good rinse after washing it and dry it off using a chamois leather.

WARNING

Protect your hands and arms from sharp-edged metal parts when cleaning the under floor or the inside of the wheel housings or the wheel trims – risk of cuts!

CAUTION

- Only apply slight pressure when cleaning the vehicle's paintwork.
- Do not wash your vehicle in bright sunlight – risk of paint damage.

Automatic car wash systems

Read and observe and on page 152 first.

The usual precautionary measures must be taken before washing the vehicle in an automatic car wash system (e.g. closing the windows and the sliding/tilting roof etc.).

If your vehicle is fitted with any particular attached parts, such as a spoiler, roof rack system etc., it is best to consult the operator of the car wash system beforehand.

After an automatic wash with wax treatment, the lips of the wipers should be cleaned with cleaning agents specially designed for the purpose, and then degreased.

CAUTION

- Before driving through a car wash fold in the exterior mirrors - there is a risk of damage.
- Before driving through a car wash unscrew the antenna - there is a risk of damage.

Washing with a high-pressure cleaner

Read and observe and on page 152 first.

When washing the vehicle with a high-pressure cleaner, the instructions for use of the equipment must be observed. This applies in particular to the **pressure** used and to the **spraying distance**.

Maintain a sufficiently large distance to the parking aid sensors and soft materials such as rubber hoses or insulation material.

CAUTION

- The films should not be washed with any high-pressure cleaners - there is a risk of damage » page 154.
- Do not aim the water jet directly at the lock cylinders or the door or opening joints when washing the vehicle in the winter – there is a risk of freezing.
- The sensors of the parking aid can be sprayed only for a short time and there must be a minimum distance of 10 cm - there is a risk of damage.

Cleaning vehicle exterior

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

We recommend using vehicle care products from ŠKODA Original Accessories. These are available from ŠKODA Partners. The usage instructions on the package must be observed.

WARNING

- Vehicle care products may be harmful to your health if not used according to the instructions.
- Always keep the vehicle care products safe from people who are not completely independent, e.g. children - there is a danger of poisoning!
- Protect your hands and arms from sharp-edged metal parts when cleaning the under floor, the inside of the wheel housings or the wheel trims – risk of cuts!

CAUTION

- Do not use any insect sponges, rough kitchen sponges or similar cleaning products – risk of damaging the paintwork surface.
- Cleaner that contain solvents can damage the material being cleaned.

Note

Due to the special tools and knowledge required, and to avoid any potential problems with the cleaning and care of your vehicle's exterior, we recommend that the cleaning and care of your vehicle be carried out by a ŠKODA Service Partner.

Vehicle paint work

Read and observe and on page 154 first.

Preserving the vehicle paintwork

A thorough wax treatment provides the vehicle's paintwork with highly effective protection against harmful environmental influences.

The vehicle must be treated with a high-quality hard wax polish at the latest, when no more drops form on the clean paintwork.

A new layer of a high-quality hard wax polish can be applied to the clean bodywork after it has dried thoroughly.

Even if you use a wax preserver regularly we still recommend that you treat the paintwork of the vehicle at least twice a year with hard wax.

Polishing

Polishing is necessary if the vehicle's paintwork has become unattractive and if it is no longer possible to achieve a gloss with wax preservatives.

If the polish does not contain any preserving elements, the paint must be treated with a preservative afterwards.

CAUTION

- Paint damage is to be repaired immediately.
- Never apply wax to the windows.
- Mat painted or plastic parts must not be treated with polishing products or hard waxes.
- Do not polish the paintwork in a dusty environment - risk of paint scratches.
- Do not apply any paint care products to door seals or window guides.
- If possible, do not apply any paint care products to parts of the bodywork that come into contact with door seals or window guides.

Films

Read and observe and on page 154 first.

Cleaning

Films (e.g. Roof, decorative, protective films, etc.) must be cleaned more carefully than the vehicle paint.

The films may not be washed with a high-pressure cleaner.

Only wash the films with a soft cloth, mild soap solution and clean, warm water.

Service life

Environmental influences (e.g. sunlight, humidity, air pollution, rockfall) affect the life of the films.

Sunlight may also affect the strength of the film colour.

Films will age and become brittle – this is entirely normal; this is not a fault.

CAUTION

- Never use aggressive cleaning agents or chemical solvents for the glued surfaces with films - there is a danger of film damage.
- Never use dirty cloths or chemical solvents for the glued surfaces with films - there is a danger of damaging the film.
- In the winter months, do not use an ice scraper to remove ice and snow from the areas with films. Do not use any other objects to remove frozen layers of snow or ice – risk of film damage.
- Do not polish the films - risk of damage!
- When transporting a load on the roof rack (e.g. roof box or similar), there is an increased risk of film damage (e.g. of chipping from the secured load).

Plastic parts

Read and observe ! and ! on page 154 first.

Clean plastic parts with a damp cloth.

If this method does not completely clean the plastic parts, use cleaning products specially designed for this purpose.

! CAUTION

Do not use paint care products on plastic parts.

Rubber seals

Read and observe ! and ! on page 154 first.

All door seals and window guides are factory-treated with a colourless matt varnish layer to prevent the freezing of painted body parts and to protect against driving noise.

! CAUTION

- Do not treat the door seals and window guides with **any** products.
- Applying additional treatments to the seals can corrode the protective coating, and driving noise may occur.

Chrome and anodized parts

Read and observe ! and ! on page 154 first.

First clean the chrome parts and anodized parts with a damp cloth and then polish them with a soft, dry cloth.

If this method does not completely clean the parts, use cleaning products specially designed for this purpose.

! CAUTION

- Do not polish the chrome parts and anodized parts in a dusty environment - risk of surface scratches.
- Never use aggressive cleaning agents or chemical solvents for these parts - there is risk of damage.

Windows and mirrors

Read and observe ! and ! on page 154 first.

Removing snow and ice

Use a plastic ice scraper for removing snow and ice from the windows and mirrors.

Cleaning windows

Regularly clean windows from the inside with clean water.

Dry the glass surfaces with a clean chamois leather or a cloth intended for this purpose.

! CAUTION

Instructions for removing snow and ice

- The ice scraper should not be moved forward and backward but in one direction to avoid any damage to the surface of the glass.
- Snow or ice that is contaminated with coarse dirt such as fine gravel, sand or salt must not be removed from the windows and mirrors – there is a risk of damage to the surface of the windows and mirrors.
- Do not remove snow or ice from glass parts using warm or hot water – risk of cracks forming in the glass.
- Make sure that when removing snow and ice from the windows, the labels attached to the vehicle by the factory are not damaged.

! CAUTION

Information for cleaning windows

- Do not clean the inside of the windows with sharp-edged objects or corrosive and acidic cleaning agents – there is a risk of damaging the heating elements or window aerial.
- When drying the windows after washing the vehicle, do not use window leathers that have been used to polish the bodywork. Residues of preservatives in the window leather can make the window dirty and reduce visibility.

Headlight glasses

Read and observe ! and ! on page 154 first.

Clean plastic front headlight lenses using clean, warm water and soap.

CAUTION

- The headlights are **never** to be wiped dry - there is a risk of damaging the protective lacquer and the headlight glass subsequently developing cracks.
- Do not use sharp objects to clean the glasses - there is a risk of damaging the protective lacquer and the headlight glasses subsequently developing cracks.
- Do not use any aggressive cleaning or chemical solvent products to clean the headlights – risk of damaging the headlight lenses.

Camera lens

Read and observe and on page 154 first.

Moisten the lens of the rear view camera first with clean water and then dry with a dry cloth.

Remove the snow from the lens with a brush and the ice from the lens with de-icing agents specifically developed for these purposes.

CAUTION

- Remove snow or ice on the lens with warm or hot water - there is a risk of damaging the lens.
- Never use cleaners containing abrasive effect to clean the lens.
- Never use pressurized water or steam jet to clean the lens.

Door closing cylinder

Read and observe and on page 154 first.

Specific products must be used for de-icing door lock cylinders.

CAUTION

Make sure that as little water as possible gets into the locking cylinder when washing the vehicle - there is a risk of freezing the lock cylinder!

Cavity protection

Read and observe and on page 154 first.

All the cavities of your vehicle which are at risk from corrosion are protected for life by a layer of **protective wax** applied in the factory.

This wax protection does not need to be inspected or re-applied.

If any small amount of wax flow out of the cavities at high temperatures, these must be removed with a plastic scraper and the stains cleaned using a petroleum cleaner.

WARNING

Safety regulations should be observed when using petroleum cleaner to remove wax – risk of fire!

Jack

Read and observe and on page 154 first.

The jack is maintenance-free.

If necessary, the moving parts of the jack should be lubricated with a suitable lubricant.

Wheels

Read and observe and on page 154 first.

Wheel rims

Also thoroughly wash the wheel rims when washing the vehicle on a regular basis.

Regularly remove salt and brake abrasion, otherwise the rim material will be corroded.

Light alloy wheels

After washing thoroughly and treat the wheel rims with a protective product for light alloy wheels.

For the treatment of wheel rims do not use products which may cause damage to the paint on the rims.

CAUTION

- Damage to the paint layer on the wheel rims must be touched up immediately.
- Severe layers of dirt on the wheels can also result in wheel imbalance. This may show itself in the form of a wheel vibration which is transmitted to the steering wheel which, in certain circumstances, can cause premature wear of the steering. This means it is necessary to remove the dirt.

Towing hitch and mounting recess

Read and observe ! and ! on page 154 first.

Close the mounting recess with the cover to prevent any dirt from getting in.

If dirt is present, clean the inner surfaces of the mounting recess and treat with a suitable preservative.

Always check the ball head before hitching a trailer. Apply a suitable grease if necessary.

Use the protective cover when stowing away the tow bar, in order to stop the boot from getting dirty.

! CAUTION

Apply grease to the inner part of the mounting recess. Make sure you do not remove any grease.

Under-body protection

Read and observe ! and ! on page 154 first.

The underside of your vehicle is already permanently protected by the factory against chemical and mechanical influences.

It is not possible to guarantee that the protective coating will not suffer any damage as the vehicle is driven.

We recommend having the protective coating underneath the vehicle and the chassis checked — preferably before the beginning of winter and at the end of winter.

! WARNING

Never use additional underbody protection or anti-corrosion agents for exhaust pipes, catalytic converters, diesel particle filters or heat shields.
When the engine reaches its operating temperature, these substances may ignite - risk of fire!

Wiper blades

Read and observe ! and ! on page 154 first.

Clean the wiper blades regularly with a glass cleaner. The wiper blades should be cleaned with a sponge or cloth if they are heavily soiled by insect residues, for example.

The wiper blades can become soiled with wax residues after washing in automatic vehicle wash systems for example.

Interior care

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

We recommend using vehicle care products from ŠKODA Original Accessories. These are available from ŠKODA Partners. The usage instructions on the package must be observed.

! WARNING

- Vehicle care products may be harmful to your health if not used according to the instructions.
- Always keep the vehicle care products safe from people who are not completely independent, e.g. children - there is a danger of poisoning!
- Air fresheners and scents can be hazardous to heath when the temperature inside the vehicle is high.

! CAUTION

- Be sure to check clothing for colour fastness to avoid any damage or visible stains on the material (leather), panels and textiles.
- Remove fresh stains such as those from ball-point pens, ink, lipstick, shoe polish, etc., from the material (leather), panels and textiles as quickly as possible.
- Do not attach scents or air fresheners to the dash panel – there is a risk of damage to the dash panel.

▪ Do not attach any stickers to the filaments or glass antenna - there is risk of damage.
▪ Do not clean the roof panelling with a brush – there is a risk of damage to the surface of the panelling.
▪ Cleaner that contain solvents can damage the material being cleaned.
▪ Apply only a small amount of the cleaning and care product.

Note

Due to the special tools and knowledge required, and to avoid any potential problems with the cleaning and care of the interior of your vehicle, we recommend that cleaning and care of the interior of your vehicle be carried out by a ŠKODA service partner.

Natural leather

Read and observe and on page 157 first.

The leather needs, depending on the strain placed on it, regular cleaning and maintenance.

Dust and dirt in pores and creases cause abrasions on the surface and lead to premature embrittlement of the leather surface. Therefore, they must be removed **regularly at short intervals** with a cloth or vacuum cleaner.

Clean soiled leather surfaces with a water-dampened cotton or woollen cloth and then dry with a clean, dry cloth ».

Clean **severely soiled areas** with a cloth soaked in a mild soap solution (2 tablespoons of neutral soap to 1 litre of water).

To **remove stains**, use a cleaning agent specially designed for this purpose.

Treat the leather periodically with a suitable leather protector and use a skin care cream with light blocker and impregnation after each cleaning.

CAUTION

▪ Ensure that no part of the leather is soaked through during cleaning and that no water gets into the seams. Otherwise, the leather could become brittle or cracked.
▪ Avoid leaving the vehicle for lengthy periods in bright sunlight to avoid the leather from bleaching. If the vehicle is parked in the open for lengthy periods, protect the leather from direct sunlight by covering it.
▪ The use of an additional mechanical steering wheel lock may damage the leather surface of the steering wheel.
▪ Some clothing materials, e.g. dark denim, do not have sufficient colour fastness. This can cause damage or clearly visible discolouration to seat covers, even when used correctly. This applies particularly to light-coloured seat covers. This does not relate to a fault in the seat cover, but rather to poor colour fastness of the clothing textiles.
▪ Sharp-edged objects on items of clothing such as zip fasteners, rivets, sharp-edged belts etc may leave permanent scratches or signs of rubbing on the surface or damage these. Such damage cannot be subsequently recognised as a justified complaint.

Note

When using the vehicle, minor visible changes may occur to the leather parts of the covers (e.g. wrinkles or creases) as a result of the stress applied to the covers.

Artificial leather, materials and Alcantara®

Read and observe and on page 157 first.

Artificial leather
Clean artificial leather with a damp cloth.

If this method does not completely clean the artificial leather, use a mild soap solution or cleaning products specially designed for this purpose.

Fabric
Clean upholstery cover materials and cloth trims on doors, boot cover, etc. using specific cleaning agents, e.g., dry foam.

Use a soft sponge, brush, or commercially available microfibre cloth.

Use a cloth and a cleaning agent specifically designed for this purpose to clean the roof trim.

Remove any lumps on the cover fabric and any fabric residue using a brush.

Remove stubborn hair using a "cleaning glove".

Alcantara®
Dust and dirt in pores, creases and seams may chafe and damage the surface. Therefore, they must be removed **regularly at short intervals** with a cloth or vacuum cleaner.

Minor changes in colour caused by use are normal.

CAUTION

- For Alcantara® seat covers, do not use any solvents, floor wax, shoe cream, stain remover, leather cleaners or similar agents.
- Avoid leaving the vehicle in bright sunlight for long periods of time in order to stop the artificial leather, materials or Alcantara® from bleaching. During extended periods of standing outdoors, protect artificial leather, fabrics or Alcantara® by covering.
- Some clothing materials, e.g. dark denim, do not have sufficient colour fastness. This can cause damage or clearly visible discolouration to seat covers, even when used correctly. This applies particularly to light-coloured seat covers. This does not relate to a fault in the seat cover, but rather to poor colour fastness of the clothing textiles.

Seat covers

Read and observe and on page 157 first.

Electrically heated seats

Use a specific cleaning agent such as dry foam or similar to clean the covers. » .

Seats without seat heating

Thoroughly vacuum the seat covers with a vacuum cleaner before cleaning.

Clean the seat covers with a damp cloth or cleaning products specially designed for this purpose.

Indented points arising on the fabrics by everyday use, can be removed by brushing against the direction of hair with a damp brush.

Always clean all parts of the covers, so that there are no visible edges. Then allow the seat to dry completely.

CAUTION

- Do not clean the covers of electrically heated seats either with water or with other liquids - there is a risk of damaging the seat heating system.
- Regularly remove dust from the seat covers using a vacuum cleaner.
- Electrically heated seats must not be dried after cleaning by switching on the heater.
- Do not sit on wet seats - risk of seat deformation.
- Always clean the seats from "seam to seam".

Safety belts

Read and observe and on page 157 first.

Wash dirty seat belts with mild soapy water.

Remove coarse dirt with a soft brush.

WARNING

- The seat belts must not be removed for cleaning.
- Never clean the seat belts chemically as chemical cleaning products could destroy the fabric.
- The seat belts must not be allowed to come into contact with corrosive liquids (e.g. acids).
- The seat belts must be fully dried before being rolled up.

Inspecting and replenishing

Fuel

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

The correct fuel grades for your vehicle are specified on the inside of the fuel filler flap » Fig. 163 *on page 160*.

WARNING

- The operating instructions of the refuelling system must always be followed.
- Do not smoke when refuelling and do not use a mobile phone.
- Fuel vapours are explosive - can be fatal!

CAUTION

- Never drive until the fuel tank is completely empty! The irregular supply of fuel can cause misfiring, which can result in damage to parts of the engine and the exhaust system.
- Immediately remove any fuel that has spilled onto the vehicle's paintwork – risk of paint damage.
- If the vehicle was not purchased in the country where it was intended to be operated, you should check whether the fuel specified by the manufacturer is offered in the country where the vehicle will be operated. You should also perhaps check whether the manufacturer has recommended a different fuel for operation of the vehicle in the corresponding country. If no prescribed fuel is available, then you must check whether it is permitted by the manufacturer to operate the vehicle with another fuel type.

Petrol and diesel refuelling

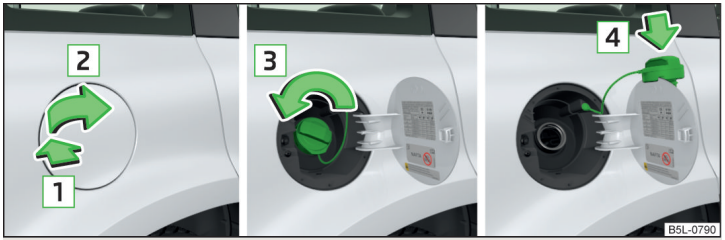

Fig. 163 **Open fuel filler flap / unscrew tank cap / place the tank cap on the fuel filler flap**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 160 first.

Refuelling can be done if the following conditions are met.

✓ The vehicle is unlocked.
✓ The engine and the ignition are switched off.
✓ The auxiliary heating and ventilation is switched off » page 110.

Vehicles with lockable fuel filler flap

› Press on the fuel filler flap in the direction of the arrow 1 accordingly » Fig. 163.
› Open the cover in the direction of the arrow 2.
› Unscrew the tank cap in the direction of the arrow 3.
› Remove the tank cap and place on top of the fuel filler flap in direction of arrow 4.
› Insert the pump nozzle into the fuel filler tube as far as it will go.

The fuel tank is full just as soon as the pump nozzle switches off for the first time » !.

› Remove the pump nozzle from the fuel filler neck and put it back in the pump.
› Place the filler cap onto the fuel filler neck and turn it in the opposite direction to the arrow until it securely engages 3.
› Close the fuel filler flap until it clicks into place.

Check that the fuel filler flap is closed properly.

Vehicles without lockable fuel filler flap

› Press on the fuel filler flap in the direction of the arrow 1 accordingly » Fig. 163.
› Open the cover in the direction of the arrow 2.
› Hold the filler cap and unlock by turning the key in the direction of the arrow 3.
› Unscrew the tank cap in the direction of the arrow 3.
› Remove the tank cap and place on top of the fuel filler flap in direction of arrow 4.
› Insert the pump nozzle into the fuel filler tube as far as it will go.

The fuel tank is full just as soon as the pump nozzle switches off for the first time » !.

› Remove the pump nozzle from the fuel filler neck and put it back in the pump.
› Screw in the tank cap in the opposite direction of the arrow 3 until it audibly clicks into place.
› Hold the filler cap and lock it by turning in the opposite direction of the arrow 3. Remove the key.
› Close the fuel filler flap until it clicks into place.

Check that the fuel filler flap is closed properly.

! WARNING

Instructions for filling the reserve canister
- Never fill the reserve can inside the vehicle.
- Never place the reserve can on the vehicle.
- Always place the reserve can on the floor.
- We do not recommend carrying any fuel canisters in your vehicle for safety reasons. in the event of an accident, these canisters can become damaged and fuel may escape – risk of fire!

! CAUTION

- The fuel tank is full just as soon as the pump nozzle switches off for the first time, provided the nozzle has been operated properly. Not continue refuelling.
- Be careful when filling diesel fuel from the spare canister and then do this slowly and cautiously – danger of contaminating the body.

i Note

The fuel capacity for vehicles with front wheel drive is about **55 litres,** and for vehicles with four-wheel drive about **60 litres,** with about **9 litres** as reserve.

Lead-free petrol

The correct fuel grades for your vehicle are specified on the inside of the fuel filler flap.

Read and observe ! and ! on page 160 first.

The vehicle can only be operated with **unleaded petrol** in compliance with the **EN 228**[1)] standard.

All petrol engines can be operated using petrol that contains at **most** 10% bioethanol **(E10)**.

Unleaded petrol 95/91 or 92 or 93 RON/ROZ
We recommend using unleaded fuel with an octane rating of **95** RON. Unleaded petrol with the octane ratings **91, 92** or **93** RON can also be used, but may result in a slight loss in performance and slightly increased fuel consumption.

Unleaded petrol min. 95 RON / ROZ
Use unleaded fuel with the octane rating **95** RON or higher.

In an **emergency** petrol with the octane ratings **91, 92** and/or **93** RON can also be used, but may result in a slight loss in performance and slightly increased fuel consumption and exhaust emissions. Continue driving at medium engine speeds and minimum engine load » !.

Refuel using petrol of the prescribed octane number as soon as possible.

Unleaded petrol 98/(95) RON / ROZ
We recommend using unleaded fuel with an octane rating of **98** RON or higher. Unleaded petrol **95** RON can also be used but this results in a slight loss in performance and slightly increased fuel consumption.

In an **emergency** petrol with the octane ratings **91, 92** and/or **93** RON can also be used, but may result in a slight loss in performance and slightly increased fuel consumption and exhaust emissions. Continue driving at medium engine speeds and minimum engine load » !.

Refuel using petrol of the prescribed octane number as soon as possible.

1) In Germany also DIN 51626-1 or E10 for unleaded petrol with octane number 91 or 95 or DIN 51626-2 or E5 for unleaded petrol with octane number 95 and 98.

Fuel additives
Unleaded petrol in accordance with the EN 228 standard[1] meets all the conditions for a smooth-running engine. We therefore recommend that no fuel additives are used. This can result in considerable damage to parts of the engine or the exhaust system.

CAUTION
- Even one filling of the tank with petrol that does not meet the standards can lead to serious damage to parts of the exhaust system!
- If a fuel other than unleaded fuel which complies to the above mentioned standards (e.g. leaded petrol) is put in the tank by mistake, do not start the engine or switch on the ignition. Extensive damage to engine parts can occur.

CAUTION
- If petrol with a lower octane number than the one prescribed is used do not drive with a high engine speed. A high engine load can severely damage engine components.
- Even in the event of an emergency, petrol of a lower octane number than **91** RON must not be used, otherwise the engine can be severely damaged.

CAUTION
In no case may fuel additives with metal components be used, especially not with manganese or iron content. There is a risk of causing severe damage to parts of the engine or exhaust system.

CAUTION
Fuels with metal components, such as LRP (lead replacement petrol) **must not be used. There is a risk of causing severe damage to parts of the engine or exhaust system.**

Note
- Unleaded petrol that has a higher octane number than that required by the engine can be used without limitations.
- On vehicles with prescribed unleaded petrol **95/91, 92 or 93** RON, the use of petrol with a higher octane number than **95** RON does not result in a noticeable power increase or a lower fuel consumption.
- On vehicles using prescribed unleaded petrol of **min. 95** RON, the use of petrol with a higher octane number than **95** RON can increase the power and reduce fuel consumption.

Diesel fuel

The correct fuel grades for your vehicle are specified on the inside of the fuel filler flap.

Read and observe ! and ! on page 160 first.

The vehicle can only be operated with **diesel fuel** that meets the **EN 590**[2] standard.

All diesel engines can be operated using diesel fuel with at **most** 7% biodiesel **(B7)**[3].

On the **Indian** market, your vehicle will only be able to run on **diesel fuel** compliant with standard **IS 1460/Bharat IV**. If diesel fuel which complies with this standard is not available, you can refuel with diesel fuel according to standard **IS 1460/Bharat III** in case of emergency.

Operation in winter - Winter-grade diesel fuel
In the cold season, only use "winter-grade diesel fuel" which will still operate properly even at a temperature of -20 °C.

It is often the case in countries with different climatic conditions that diesel fuels available have a different temperature characteristic. ŠKODA Partners and filling stations in the relevant country will be able to provide you with information regarding the diesel fuels available.

[1] In Germany also DIN 51626-1 or E10 for unleaded petrol with octane number 91 or 95 or DIN 51626-2 or E5 for unleaded petrol with octane number 95 and 98.
[2] In Germany also DIN 51628, in Austria ÖNORM C 1590, in Russia GOST R 52368-2005 / EN 590:2004.
[3] In Germany according to the DIN 52638 standard, in Austria ÖNORM C 1590, in France EN 590.

Preheating fuel
The vehicle is fitted with a fuel filter preheating system. This secures operation of a vehicle using diesel fuel down to an environmental temperature of -25 °C.

Diesel fuel additives
The diesel fuel in accordance with the prescribed standards meets all the conditions for a smooth running engine. We therefore recommend that no diesel fuel additives are used. This can result in considerable damage to parts of the engine or the exhaust system.

CAUTION
- Just filling the tank once with diesel fuel that does not comply with the standard, can cause severe damage to parts of the engine, the fuel and exhaust system.
- If a different fuel other than diesel fuel, which complies to the above mentioned standards (e.g. petrol) is put into the tank, do not start the engine or switch on the ignition! Extensive damage to engine parts can occur.
- Water which has collected in the fuel filter can cause engine faults.

CAUTION
- The vehicle cannot be operated with biofuel **RME**, therefore this fuel must not be refuelled and driven. The use of biofuel **RME** can cause considerable damage to parts of the engine or fuel system.
- Do not mix any fuel additives, so-called "flow improvers" (petrol and similar agents) into the diesel. This can result in considerable damage to parts of the engine or the exhaust system.

AdBlue® and its refilling

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

In order to reduce pollutant emissions from vehicles with diesel engines and the SCR catalyst, a urea - AdBlue® solution is injected into the exhaust system.

For vehicles with the AdBlue® injection system there is a note on the inside of the fuel filler flap referring to the location of the AdBlue® filler neck and the AdBlue® minimum replenishment amount, that is required by a low AdBlue® level.

AdBlue® standard
Only use AdBlue® that corresponds to the standard ISO 22241-1.

AdBlue® consumption
The AdBlue ® consumption amounts to around 1.2-1.6 l/1000 km.

The AdBlue® consumption depends on driving style, the operating temperature of the system and on the weather conditions.

For information on storing AdBlue ®
- Keep AdBlue® only in original sealed containers and in a safe place.
- Keep the container out of the reach of children.
- Do not expose the containers to direct sunlight or temperatures above 30° C.

Instructions for cleaning
- If any painted vehicle parts, clothing and carpets are splashed with AdBlue® wash the affected area with a damp cloth and plenty of cold water.
- Remove any dried AdBlue® with warm water and a sponge.

WARNING
- AdBlue® is an irritating and corrosive solution that can injure the skin, eyes and respiratory system!
- If AdBlue® comes into contact with skin or eyes, wash the affected area immediately for at least. 15 minutes with water and seek medical attention immediately.
- If AdBlue® is swallowed rinse your mouth with water for at least 15 minutes and consult a doctor immediately.

CAUTION
- Never carry containers with AdBlue® permanently in the vehicle - there is a risk of damage to the vehicle interior.
- Never add water or other additives AdBlue ®.

Note

- The AdBlue® solution freezes at a temperature of -11 °C and below. The system has a heater to ensure the operability at low temperatures.
- We recommend purchasing AdBlue® refill bottles from the ŠKODA original parts.
- AdBlue® is a registered trademark of the VDA. AdBlue® is also known as AUS 32 (Aqueous Urea Solution) or DEF (Diesel Exhaust Fluid).

Tank and level check

Read and observe ! and ! on page 163 first.

Tank
AdBlue® is in a separate tank, the filler is in the luggage compartment under a filler cap marked with the symbol and the lettering "AdBlue®" » Fig. 164 *on page 164*.

The AdBlue ® tank filling is about **8.5 litres**.

Checking the level
The AdBlue® level is automatically monitored.

With too little AdBlue® in the tank the distance that can be driven with the remaining AdBlue® amount is shown in the instrument cluster display » page 31, *AdBlue® level too low*.

› At least 4.5 litres of AdBlue® should be replenished, otherwise, after covering the displayed distance **no engine start is possible**.

! CAUTION

- Never overfill the AdBlue® tank – there is a risk of damaging the vehicle components!
- Never completely empty the AdBlue® tank!

AdBlue® replenish

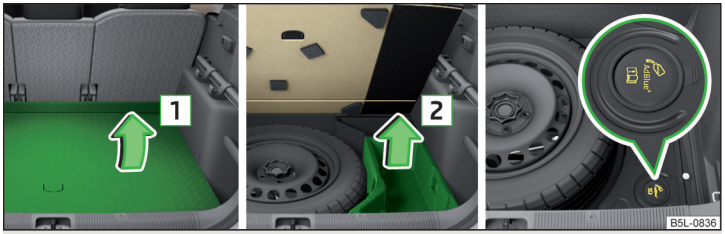

Fig. 164 **Raise flooring / remove box / cover lid**

Fig. 165 **Open the cover lid / rotate the fuel filler cap / filler neck**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 163 first.

Information for refilling of AdBlue ®
We recommend AdBlue® is refilled by a specialist garage. If necessary, you can refill the tank using a top-up bottle.

We recommend that you use refill bottles from ŠKODA Original Accessories. They have a special filling system that reduces the risk of contamination of the vehicle interior when refilling AdBlue®.

When refuelling AdBlue® select a location with level ground.

› Fold up the flooring in the luggage compartment in the arrow direction 1 » Fig. 164.
› Remove the box for the vehicle tools in the direction of arrow 2.
› Open the filler cap in the direction of the arrow 3 » Fig. 165.
› Unscrew the tank cap in the direction of arrow 4.

› Fill the AdBlue® through the filler A according to the instructions on the refill bottle » !.
› After filling AdBlue® put the tank cap on the fuel filler neck and turn in the opposite direction of the arrow 4 until it reaches the stop.
› Close the filler cap in the opposite direction to the arrow 3.
› Store the box for the vehicle tools in the same place.
› Fold back the floor in the luggage compartment.

Before driving

› After filling AdBlue® **only** switch on the ignition and leave it on for at least 30 s, so that the refilling can be recognized by the system.

Only then start the engine.

! CAUTION

Make sure that when refilling AdBlue® the interior of the vehicle is not splashed - there is a risk of damage to the interior.

i Note

The working life of the AdBlue® solution is 4 years. After this time, the solution must be replaced by a specialist garage.

Engine compartment

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

! WARNING

Injuries or scolding or risks of accident or fire may occur when working in the engine compartment. For this reason, it is essential to comply with the warning instructions outlined below and with the general applicable safety rules. The engine compartment of your car is a hazardous area!

! WARNING

Instructions before beginning work in the engine compartment
- Turn off the engine and remove the ignition key.
- Firmly apply the handbrake.
- For vehicles with manual transmission the lever into the neutral position.
- On vehicles with automatic transmission, shift the selector lever into the **P** position.
- Allow the engine to cool.
- Never open the bonnet if you can see steam or coolant escaping from the engine compartment – risk of scalding! Wait until no more steam or coolant is escaping.

! WARNING

Information for working in the engine room
- Keep all people, especially children, away from the engine compartment.
- Never touch the radiator fan. The fan might suddenly start running!
- Do not touch any hot engine parts – risk of burns!

! WARNING

Information for working in the engine compartment with the engine running
- Pay particular attention to moving engine parts, e.g. V-ribbed belt, generator, radiator fan - danger to life!
- Never touch the electric wiring on the ignition system.
- Avoid short circuits in the electrical system, particularly on the vehicle's battery.
- Always make sure that no jewellery, loose clothing or long hair can get caught in rotating engine parts – risk to life! Always remove any jewellery, tie back long hair and wear tight fitting clothing before completing any work.

! WARNING

Information for working on the fuel system or the electrical system
- Always disconnect the vehicle battery from the electrical system.
- Do not smoke.
- Never work near open flames.
- Always have a functioning fire extinguisher nearby.

WARNING

- Read and observe the information and warning instructions on the fluid containers.
- Keep the working fluids in sealed original containers and safe from people who are not completely independent, e.g. children.
- Never spill operating fluids over the hot engine - risk of fire.
- If you intend to work underneath the vehicle, you must secure the vehicle from rolling away and support it with suitable supporting blocks; the car jack is not sufficient – risk of injury!

CAUTION

Always top up using the correct specification of fluids. This may result in major operating problems and also vehicle damage!

For the sake of the environment

In view of the requirements for the environmentally friendly disposal of fluids and the special tools and knowledge required for such work, we recommend that fluids be changed by a specialist garage.

Note

- Please consult a specialist garage for any questions relating to fluids.
- Fluids with the proper specifications can be purchased from the ŠKODA Original Accessories or from the ŠKODA Genuine Parts ranges.

Opening and closing the bonnet

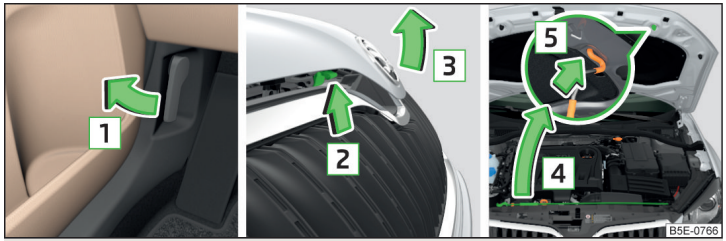

Fig. 166 **Opening the bonnet**

Read and observe and on page 165 first.

Open flap

› Open the front door.
› Pull the release lever underneath the dash panel in the direction of the arrow 1 » Fig. 166.

Before opening the bonnet, ensure that the arms of the windscreen wipers are correctly in place against the windscreen, otherwise the paintwork on the flap could be damaged.

› Press the release lever in the direction of the arrow 2 and the bonnet is unlocked.
› Grasp the bonnet catch and lift in the direction of arrow 3.
› Remove the lid prop in the direction of arrow 4 from the holder.
› Secure the open flap inserting the end of the post into the opening in the direction of arrow 5.

Close the flap

› Lift the bonnet.
› Decouple the bonnet support and press into the holder designed to hold it.
› Let the bonnet drop into the lock carrier lock from a height of around 20 cm – do **not push it in**.

WARNING

- Check that the bonnet is closed properly.
- If you notice that the lock is not properly engaged while driving, stop the vehicle immediately and close the bonnet – risk of accident!
- Make sure that when closing the bonnet, no body parts are crushed - there is danger of injury!

CAUTION

Never open the bonnet by the locking lever » Fig. 166.

Engine compartment overview

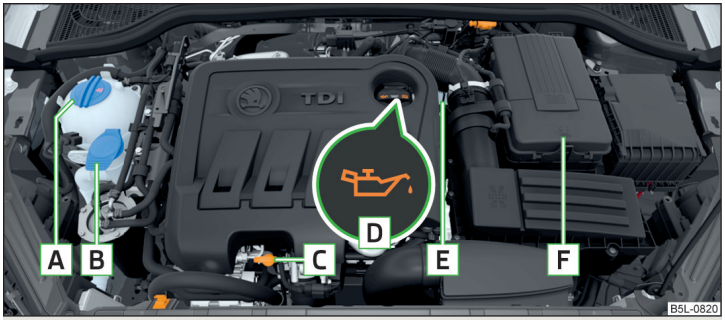

Fig. 167 **Principle sketch: Engine compartment**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 165 first.

Layout of the engine compartment » Fig. 167

A	Coolant expansion reservoir	170
B	Windscreen washer fluid reservoir	167
C	Engine oil dipstick	169
D	Engine oil filler opening	169
E	Brake fluid reservoir	171
F	Battery (below a cover)	172

Note

The location of the inspection points in the engine compartment of petrol and diesel engines is practically identical.

Radiator fan

Read and observe ! and ! on page 165 first.

The radiator fan is powered by an electric motor. Operation is controlled according to the temperature of the coolant.

WARNING

After switching off the ignition, the fan may intermittently continue to operate for approx. 10 minutes.

Windscreen washer system

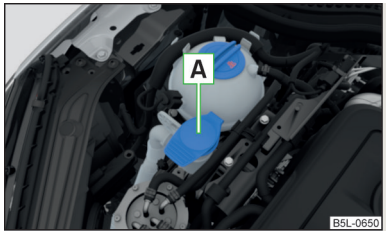

Fig. 168
Windscreen washer fluid reservoir

Read and observe ! and ! on page 165 first.

The windscreen washer fluid reservoir A is located in the engine compartment » Fig. 168.

The cleaning fluid is provided for the cleaning of the front and rear window as well as the headlight.

The capacity of the reservoir is about 3 litres or about 5.5 litres on vehicles that have a headlight cleaning system [1].

Clear water is not sufficient to intensively clean the windscreen and headlights. We recommend using clean water together with a screen cleaner from the range of ŠKODA Original Accessories **(with antifreeze in winter)**, which will remove any stubborn dirt.

In Winter, the washing water should always be mixed with antifreeze even if the vehicle has heated windscreen washer nozzles.

Under exceptional circumstances, methylated spirits can also be used if no screen cleaner with antifreeze is available. The concentration of methylated spirits must not be more than 15 %. The freeze protection at this concentration is sufficient only to -5 °C.

[1] In some countries, 5.5 ltr. applies for both variants.

CAUTION

- Under no circumstances must radiator antifreeze or other additives be added to the windscreen washer fluid.
- If the vehicle is fitted with a headlight cleaning system, only cleaning products which do not attack the polycarbonate coating of the headlights must be added to the windscreen washer fluid.
- Do not remove the filter from the windscreen washer fluid reservoir when refilling, as this may cause contamination of the liquid transportation system, leading in turn to a windscreen washer system malfunction.

Engine oil

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

The engine has been factory-filled with a high-grade oil that can be use throughout the year - except in extreme climate zones.

The engine oils are undergoing continuous further development. Thus the information stated in this Owner's Manual is only correct at the time of publication.

ŠKODA Service Partners are informed about the latest changes by the manufacturer. We therefore recommend that the oil change be completed by a ŠKODA Service Partner.

The specifications (VW standards) stated in the following can be indicated separately or together with other specifications on the bottle.

The engine oil should be changed after specified service intervals » page 48.

WARNING

The engine compartment of your car is a hazardous area. The following warning instructions must be followed at all times when working in the engine compartment » page 165.

CAUTION

Do not pour any additives into the engine oil – risk of serious damage to the engine parts.

Note

- Before a long drive we recommend that you purchase and carry with you engine oil which complies with the specification for your vehicle.
- We recommend that you use oils from ŠKODA Original Accessories.
- If oil comes into contact with your skin, the affected area must be washed thoroughly.

Specification

Read and observe ! and ! on page 168 first.

Vehicles with variable service intervals

Petrol engines	Specification
1.2 l/81 kW TSI	VW 504 00
1.4 l/92, 110 kW TSI	
1.8 ltr./112 kW TSI	

Diesel engines[a)]	Specification
2.0 l/81, 103, 110 kW TDI CR	VW 507 00

a) Engine oil VW 505 01 can optionally be used in diesel engines without a **DPF**.

Vehicles with fixed service intervals

Petrol engines	Specification
1.2 l/81 kW TSI	VW 502 00
1.4 l/92, 110 kW TSI	
1.6 l./81 kW MPI	
1.8 ltr./112 kW TSI	VW 502 00
	applies to Russia SAE 0W-30 VW 502 00 / 505 00

Diesel engines[a)]	Specification
2.0 l/81, 103, 110 kW TDI CR	VW 507 00

a) Engine oil VW 505 01 can optionally be used in diesel engines without a **DPF**.

CAUTION

- If the above engine oils are not available, a different engine oil can be used in an emergency. To prevent damage to the engine, a **maximum of 0.5 litres** only of the following engine oils may be used:
  - For petrol engine models: ACEA A3/ACEA B4 or API SN, (API SM);
  - For diesel engine models: ACEA C3 or API CJ-4.

Checking the oil level

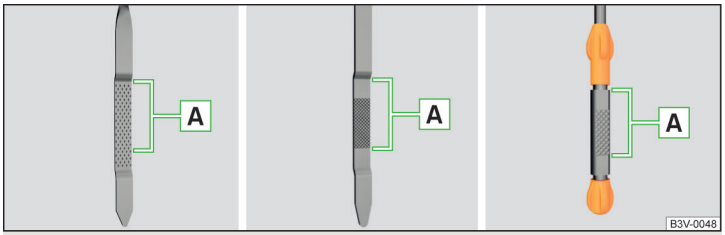

Fig. 169 **Principle sketch: Dipstick**

Read and observe and on page 168 first.

The dipstick indicates the engine oil level .

Dipstick » Fig. 169

A The oil level must be within this range.

The oil can be checked and topped up, if the following conditions are satisfied.

✓ The vehicle is standing on a horizontal surface.
✓ The engine operating temperature is reached.
✓ The engine is turned off.
✓ The bonnet is open.

Checking the level

› Wait a few minutes until the engine oil flows back into the oil trough.
› Pull out the dipstick.
› Wipe the dipstick with a clean cloth and insert it again to the stop.
› Pull the dipstick out again and check the oil level.
› Re-insert the dipstick.

The engine consumes a little oil. The oil consumption may be as much as 0.5 l/1 000 km depending on your style of driving and the conditions under which you operate your vehicle. Consumption may be slightly higher than this during the first 5 000 km.

The oil level must be checked at regular intervals.

In case of low oil level, the instrument cluster display shows a warning light as well as the relevant notification » page 34. Check the oil level using the dipstick as soon as possible. Add oil accordingly.

CAUTION

- The oil level must never be above the range A » Fig. 169 - risk of damage to the motor as well as the exhaust system.
- Stop driving if for some reason it is not possible to top up the engine oil under the current conditions. Switch off the engine and seek assistance from a specialist garage.
- If the oil level is above the range A, stop driving! Switch off the engine and seek assistance from a specialist garage.

Replenishing

Read and observe and on page 168 first.

› Unscrew the cap of the engine oil filler opening » Fig. 167 *on page 167*.
› Replenish the oil in portions of 0.5 litres in accordance with the correct specifications » page 168.
› Check the oil level » page 169.
› Screw the lid of the engine oil filler closed carefully.
› Pull the dipstick out as far as the stop.

Coolant

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

The coolant provides cooling for the motor.

It consists of water and coolant additive with additives that protect the cooling system against corrosion and prevents furring.

The coolant additive share in the coolant must be at least. 40%.

The coolant additive may be increased to a maximum of 60%.

The correct mixing ratio of water and coolant additive is to be checked if necessary by a specialist garage or is to be restored if necessary.

The description of the coolant is shown in the coolant expansion reservoir » Fig. 170 *on page 170*.

WARNING

The engine compartment of your car is a hazardous area. The following warning instructions must be followed at all times when working in the engine compartment » page 165.

- The coolant is harmful to health.
- Avoid contact with the coolant.
- Coolant vapours are harmful to health.
- Never open the end cover of the coolant expansion reservoir while the engine is still warm. The cooling system is pressurized!
- When opening the end cover of the coolant expansion reservoir, cover it with a cloth to protect your face, hands and arms from hot steam or hot coolant.
- If any coolant splashes into your eyes, immediately rinse out your eyes with clear water and contact a doctor as soon as possible.
- Always keep the coolant in the original container, safe from people who are not completely independent, especially children - there is a danger of poisoning!
- If coolant is swallowed, consult a doctor immediately.
- Never spill operating fluids over the hot engine - risk of fire.

CAUTION

- Do not continue if for some reason it is not possible to fill with coolant under the current circumstances! Switch off the engine and seek assistance from a specialist garage.
- If the expansion tank is empty, do not top up with coolant. The system could fill with air - risk of engine damage, stop driving! Switch off the engine and seek assistance from a specialist garage.
- The concentration of coolant additive in the coolant must never be under 40%.
- Over 60% of coolant additive in the coolant reduces the antifreeze protection and cooling effect.
- A coolant additive that does not comply with the correct specification can significantly reduce the corrosion protection of the cooling system.
- Any faults resulting from corrosion may cause a loss of coolant and can consequently result in major engine damage.
- Do not fill the coolant above the mark A » Fig. 170 *on page 170*.
- If an error occurs, leading to the engine overheating, the help of a professional garage is to be sought - there is a risk of serious engine damage occurring.
- Additional headlights and other attached components in front of the air inlet impair the cooling efficiency of the coolant.
- Never cover the radiator - there is a risk of the engine overheating.

Note

The coolant capacity is approximately 1 l greater on vehicles that are fitted with an auxiliary heater (auxiliary heating and ventilation).

Checking the coolant level

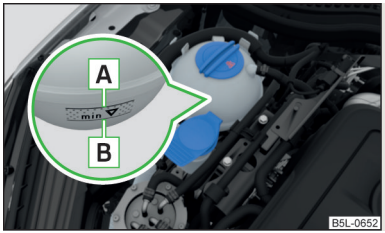

Fig. 170
Coolant expansion reservoir

Read and observe ! and ! on page 170 first.

The coolant expansion bottle is located in the engine compartment.

Coolant expansion reservoir » Fig. 170

A Mark for **the maximum** permissible coolant level

B Mark for the **lowest** permissible coolant level

The coolant level should be kept between the marks A and B.

The coolant can be checked and topped up, if the following conditions are satisfied.

✓ The vehicle is standing on a horizontal surface.

✓ The engine is turned off.

✓ The engine is not heated.

✓ The bonnet is open.

Checking the level

› Check the coolant level in the coolant expansion tank » Fig. 170.

If the engine is warm, the test result may be inaccurate. The level can also be above the mark **A** » Fig. 170.

In the event of an insufficient coolant level, a warning light is displayed in the instrument cluster as well as the relevant notification » page 33. We still recommend inspecting the coolant level directly at the reservoir from time to time.

Loss of coolant

A loss of coolant is first and foremost an **indication of a leak** in the cooling system. Do not merely top up the coolant. Have the cooling system checked by a specialist garage.

Replenishing

Read and observe and on page 170 first.

The coolant expansion tank must always contain a small amount of coolant » page 170, in section *Introduction*.

› Place a cloth over the cap of the coolant expansion tank and unscrew the cap **carefully**.
› Replenish the coolant.
› Turn the cap until it clicks into place.

Do not use an alternative additive if the specified coolant is not available. In this case, use just water and have the correct mixing ratio of water and coolant additive restored by a specialist garage as soon as possible.

Only top up with new coolant.

Brake fluid

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

The brake fluid reservoir is located in the engine compartment » Fig. 171 *on page 171*.

WARNING

- The engine compartment of your car is a hazardous area. The following warning instructions must be followed at all times when working in the engine compartment » page 165.
- Do not use used brake fluid - the function of the brake system may be impaired – risk of accident!

CAUTION

- Do not continue your journey if the fluid level has dropped below the "MIN" marking » Fig. 171 *on page 171*, do not continue driving - there is a risk of an accident! Seek help from a specialist garage.
- Brake fluid damages the paintwork of the vehicle.

Note

- The brake fluid is changed as part of a compulsory inspection service.
- We recommend using oils from the ŠKODA Original Accessories range.

Checking the brake fluid level

Fig. 171
Brake fluid reservoir

Read and observe and on page 171 first.

The fluid can be checked if the following conditions are met.

✓ The vehicle is standing on a horizontal surface.
✓ The engine is turned off.
✓ The bonnet is open.

Checking the level

› Check the level of brake fluid in the reservoir » Fig. 171.

The level must be between the "MIN" and "MAX" markings.

A slight drop in the fluid level results when driving due to normal wear-and-tear and automatic adjustment of the brake pads.

There may be an indication of a leak in the brake system, however, if the fluid level drops significantly within a short time or if it drops below the "MIN" marking.

Too low brake fluid level is indicated by the warning light (!) being shown on the display of the instrument cluster as well as the corresponding message » page 33, (!) *Brake system*.

Specification

Read and observe ! and ! on page 171 first.

To ensure the optimal functioning of the braking system, only use a brake fluid meeting the standard **VW 501 14** (this standard meets the requirements of FMVSS 116 DOT4).

Note

We recommend using brake fluids from the ŠKODA Original Accessories range.

Vehicle battery

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

The vehicle battery represents a power source for the motor to start and for the supply of electrical consumers in the car.

Warning symbols on the vehicle battery

Symbol	Meaning
	Always wear eye protection.
	Battery acid is severely caustic. Always wear gloves and eye protection.
	Keep fire, sparks, open flames and lit cigarettes well clear of the vehicle battery.
	When charging the vehicle battery, a highly explosive gas mixture is produced.
	Keep children away from the vehicle battery.

WARNING

There is risk of injuries, poisoning, chemical burns, explosions or fire when working on the battery and on the electrical system. The general applicable safety rules and the following warnings must be observed without exception.

- Keep the vehicle battery away from people who are not completely independent, especially children.
- Do not tilt the battery otherwise battery electrolyte may flow out of the battery vent openings.
- Protect your eyes by wearing safety goggles or a face shield – risk of blindness!
- Always wear protective gloves, eye and skin protection when handling the vehicle battery.
- The battery acid is strongly corrosive and must, therefore, be handled with the greatest of care.
- Corrosive fumes in the air irritate the air passages and lead to conjunctivitis and inflammation of the air passages in the lungs.
- Battery acid corrodes dental enamel and, if it comes into contact with the skin, causes deep wounds that take a long time to heal.
- If any battery acid comes into contact with your eyes, rinse the affected eye immediately with clean water for several minutes and consult a doctor immediately!
- Splashes of acid on your skin or clothes should be neutralised as soon as possible using soap suds and then rinsed with plenty of water.
- If you swallow battery acid, consult a doctor immediately!

WARNING

- The use of open flames and light should be avoided.
- Smoking and radio triggering activities should be avoided.
- Never use a damaged vehicle battery – risk of explosion!
- Never charge a frozen or thawed vehicle battery – risk of explosion and chemical burns!
- Replace a frozen vehicle battery.
- Never jump-start vehicle batteries with an electrolyte level that is too low – risk of explosion and caustic burns.

CAUTION

- Improper handling of the vehicle battery may cause damage.
- Ensure that battery acid does not come into contact with the bodywork – risk of damage to the paintwork.
- If the vehicle has not been driven for more than 3 to 4 weeks, the battery will discharge. Prevent the battery from discharging by disconnecting the battery's negative terminal ⊖ or continuously charging the battery with a very low charging current.
- Do not place the battery in direct daylight in order to protect the vehicle battery housing from the effects of ultra-violet light.
- If the vehicle is frequently used for making short trips, the vehicle battery will not have time to charge up sufficiently and may discharge.

Note

- We recommend having all work on the vehicle battery carried out by a specialist garage.
- You should replace batteries older than 5 years.

Opening the cover

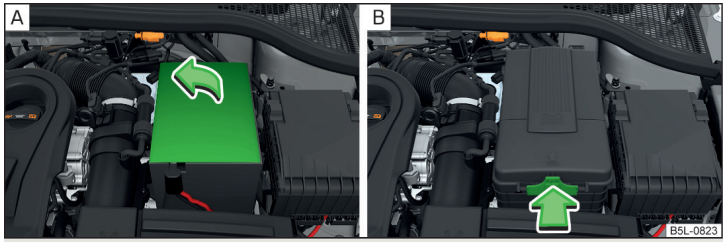

Fig. 172 **Polyester vehicle battery cover / plastic vehicle battery cover**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 172 first.

The battery is located in the engine compartment - in some models, underneath a polyester cover » Fig. 172.

› Open the battery cover in the direction of the arrow » Fig. 172- A or press the catch on the side of the battery cover in the direction of the arrow » Fig. 172- B.
› fold the cover up and remove.

The battery cover is installed in reverse order.

Checking the battery electrolyte level

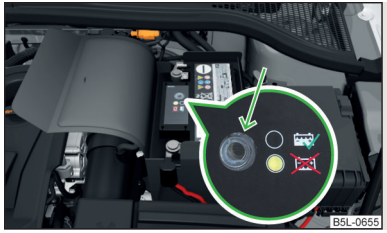

Fig. 173
Vehicle battery: Electrolyte level indicator

Read and observe ! and ! on page 172 first.

On vehicles with a vehicle battery fitted with a colour indicator, the electrolyte level can be determined by looking at the change in the colour of this display.

Air bubbles can influence the colour of the indicator. For this reason carefully knock on the indicator before carrying out the check.

Checking
Black colour - electrolyte level is correct.

Colourless or light yellow colour - electrolyte level too low, the battery must be replaced.

For technical reasons, the electrolyte level cannot be checked on vehicles with the designation **"AGM"** .

Vehicles with the START STOPsystem are fitted with a battery control unit for checking the energy level for recurring engine starts.

We recommend that you have the acid level checked regularly by a specialist garage, especially in the following cases.
▸ High external temperatures.
▸ Longer day trips.
▸ After each charge.

Winter time
The vehicle battery only has a proportion of the starting power in lower temperatures. **A discharged vehicle battery may already freeze at temperatures just below 0 °C**.

We therefore recommend that you have the battery checked and, if necessary, recharged by a specialist garage before the start of the winter.

Note
The battery acid level is also checked regularly by a specialist garage as part of the inspection service.

Charging

Read and observe ! and ! on page 172 first.

A properly charged vehicle battery is essential for reliably starting the engine.

A charging operation can be performed if the following conditions are satisfied.
✓ The engine is turned off.
✓ The ignition is switched off.
✓ All consumers are turned off.
✓ The bonnet is open.

"Fast charging" with high currents
› Disconnect both battery cables (first of all "negative", then "positive").
› Attach the terminal clamps of the charger to the battery terminals (red = "positive", black = "negative").
› Plug the mains cable of the charger into the power socket and switch on the device.
› After charging has been successful: Switch off the charger and remove the mains cable from the power socket.
› Only then disconnect the charger's terminal clamps.
› Reconnect the cables to the battery (first "positive", then "negative").

Charging with low voltages
It is not necessary to disconnect the cables from the battery if you recharge the vehicle battery, for example from a mini-charger.

Refer to the instructions of the charger manufacturer.

A charging current of 0.1 multiple of the total vehicle battery capacity (or lower) must be used until full charging is achieved.

The vent plugs of the vehicle battery should not be opened for charging.

WARNING
▪ When you charge a battery, hydrogen is released, and a highly explosive gas mixture is also produced. An explosion can be caused through sparkling over during unclamping or loosening of the cable plug while the ignition is on.
▪ Creating a bridge between the poles on the battery (e.g. with metal objects - cables) creates a short circuit - risk of damage to the battery, explosion and burning of the battery, jets of acid spurting out.
▪ Avoid creating sparks when working with cables and electrical devices. Strong sparking represents a risk of injury.
▪ Before carrying out any work on the electrical system, switch off the engine, the ignition and all electrical consumers and disconnect the negative terminal ⊖.
▪ "Quick-charging" the vehicle battery is **dangerous** and requires a special charger and specialist knowledge.
▪ We therefore recommend that vehicle batteries be "rapidly charged" by a specialist garage.

CAUTION

On vehicles with the START / STOP system or additional heating (auxiliary heating), do not connect the pole terminal of the charger directly to the negative terminal of the vehicle battery but only to the engine earth » page 189.

Replacing

Read and observe and on page 172 first.

The new vehicle battery must have the same capacity, voltage, current and the same size as the original Battery. Suitable vehicle battery types can be purchased from a specialist garage.

We recommend you have the battery replaced by a specialist garage.

Disconnecting and reconnecting

Read and observe and on page 172 first.

Disconnecting

› Switch off the ignition.
› Disconnect the negative terminal ⊖ first and then the positive ⊕ terminal of the battery.

Connecting

› Connect the positive terminal ⊕ first, then the negative ⊖battery terminal.

After disconnecting and re-connecting the vehicle battery, the following functions or devices are partially or completely inoperative.

Function / device	Operating measure
Electrical power windows	» page 61
Panorama sliding/tilting roof	» page 62
Sun screen	» page 63
Radio	Enter code » *Owner's Manual Radio*
Time settings	» page 30

CAUTION

- Disconnect the vehicle battery only with the ignition turned off - there is a risk of damaging the electrical system of the vehicle.
- Under no circumstances must the battery cables be connected incorrectly – risk of a cable fire.

Note

- After disconnecting and re-connecting the vehicle battery, we recommend having the vehicle checked by a specialist to ensure that the full functionality of all electrical systems is guaranteed.
- The data of the multi-function display will be reset.

Automatic load deactivation

Read and observe and on page 172 first.

The vehicle's electrical system automatically prevents the battery from discharging when the battery is being heavily used. This manifests itself by the following.

▸ The idling speed is raised to allow the generator to deliver more electricity to the electrical system.
▸ Where necessary, large convenience consumers such as seat heaters and rear window heaters have their power limited or are shut off completely in the event of an emergency.

CAUTION

- Despite such intervention by the vehicle electric system management, the vehicle battery may be drained. For example, when the ignition is switched on a long time with the engine turned off or the side or parking lights are turned on during longer parking.
- Consumers that are supplied via a 12-V power socket can cause the vehicle battery to discharge when the ignition is switched off.

Note

Driving comfort is not impaired by consumers being deactivated. The driver is often not aware of it having taken place.

Wheels

Tyres and wheel rims

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Only use tyres or wheel rims that have been approved by ŠKODA for your model of vehicle.

WARNING

For reasons of driving safety, do not replace tyres individually.

Note

- We recommend that any work on the wheels or tyres be carried out by a specialist garage.
- We recommend that you use wheel rims, tyres, full wheel trims and snow chains from ŠKODA Original Accessories.

Notes on using wheels

Read and observe ! on page 176 first.

New tyres do not offer optimum grip during the first 500 km and appropriate care should therefore be taken when driving.

Always fit the tyres with the deeper tread depth to the front wheels.

Tyre storage

Identify disassembled tyres so that the previous direction of rotation can be maintained if the tyres are reassembled.

Always store wheels or tyres in a cool, dry place that is as dark as possible. Tyres which are not fixed to a wheel trim should be stored upright.

Tyre age

Tyres age and lose their original characteristics, even if they are not being used. The service life of the tyres is 6 years. Therefore, we recommend not using tyres that are older than 6 years.

Wheel bolts

Wheels and wheel bolts are matched to each other in terms of design. We recommend that you use wheel rims, wheel bolts from ŠKODA Original Accessories.

WARNING

Never use tyres if you do not know anything about the condition and age.

Tyre pressure

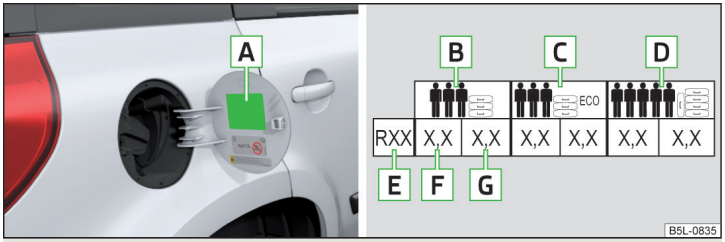

Fig. 174 **Label with a table of tyre sizes and tyre pressure value / inflate tyres**

Read and observe ! on page 176 first.

The prescribed tyre inflation is on the sticker with pictograms A» Fig. 174 (for some countries, the pictograms are replaced with a text).

Tyre pressure is always to match the load.

B Inflation pressure for half load

C Inflation pressure for environmentally-friendly operation
As a result of pressure level adaption to this value, the fuel consumption and pollutant emissions may fall slightly.

D Inflation pressure for full load

E Tyre diameter in inches
These details are intended only as information for the specified tyre pressure and does not list approved tyre sizes for your vehicle.
The approved tyre sizes for your vehicle are listed in the vehicle's technical documentation (the so called COC document) and this also states the declaration of conformity.
The approved tyre diameter for your vehicle is also provided with the vehicle data » page 204.

F Tyre pressure value on the front axle

G Tyre pressure value on the rear axle

Check tyre pressures
Check the tyre pressure, including that of the emergency or spare wheel, at least once a month and also before setting off on a long journey.

Always check the inflation pressure when the tyres are cold. Do not reduce the higher pressure of warm tyres.

In vehicles with tyre pressure monitoring, tyre pressure values must be stored every time the tyre pressure changes » page 141.

! WARNING

- Having the correct tyre inflation pressure is always the driver's responsibility.
- Too low or too high inflation pressure impairs handling.
- If the inflation pressure is too low, the tyre will have to overcome a higher rolling resistance. This will cause a significant increase in the temperature of the tyre, especially at higher speeds. This can result in tread separation and a tyre blow-out.
- In the event of very fast tyre inflation pressure loss, such as a sudden tyre failure, an attempt should be made to bring the vehicle carefully to a stop without sudden steering movements and without any hard braking.

For the sake of the environment
Tyres that are insufficiently inflated increase your fuel consumption.

Note
The declaration of conformity (COC document), can be obtained from a ŠKODA[1)] partner.

Tyre wear

Read and observe ! on page 176 first.

Tyre wear depends on the pressure, driving style, and other circumstances.

Attention to the following factors can reduce tyre wear.

Driving style
Fast cornering, sharp acceleration and braking increase the wear of your tyres.

Wheel balance
The wheels of a new vehicle are balanced. When driving, however, there are a range of factors that may result in an imbalance. This may become apparent by a "vibration" in the steering. If this is the case, have the wheels checked by a specialist garage.

Have the wheels likewise rebalanced after replacing the tyres.

Setting the vehicle geometry
Incorrect wheel alignment at the front or rear leads to excess wear on the tyres and impairs driving safety. With a distinct tyre wear pattern, we recommend that you check the setting of the vehicle geometry in a specialist workshop.

! WARNING

- An incorrect wheel alignment at the front or rear impairs handling.
- Unusual vibrations or pulling of the vehicle to one side could be a sign of tyre damage. If there is any doubt that a wheel is damaged, immediately reduce your speed and stop! If no external tyre damage is evident, drive slowly and carefully to the nearest specialist garage to have the vehicle checked.

[1)] Only valid for some countries and some models.

Tyre wear indicator and wheel replacement

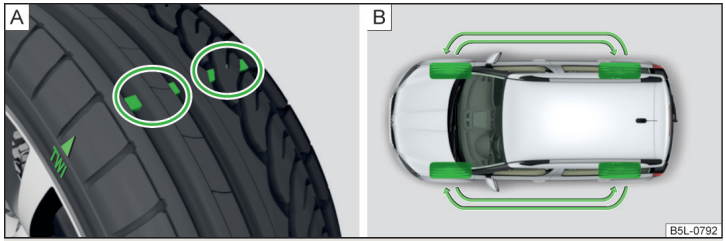

Fig. 175 **Principle sketch: Replace tyre tread with wear indicators / wheels**

Read and observe ! on page 176 first.

Wear indicators
The base of the tread of the tyres contains has a 1.6 mm high wear indicator » Fig. 175 - A. In some countries, different tyre wear rates may apply.

Markings on the walls of the tyres through the letters "TWI", triangular symbols or other symbols identify the position of the wear indicators.

Replacement of wheels
For uniform wear on all tyres, we recommend that you change the wheels every 10 000 km according to the scheme » Fig. 175- B. You will then obtain approximately the same life for all the tyres.

After a wheel has been replaced, the tyre pressure has to be adjusted.

In vehicles with tyre pressure monitoring, save tyre pressure values» page 140.

! WARNING

- You must have your tyres replaced with new ones at the latest when the wear indicators have been worn down.
- Worn tyres impair necessary adhesion to the road surface, particularly at high speeds on wet roads. This could lead to "aquaplaning" (uncontrolled vehicle movement – "swimming" on a wet road surface).

Tyre damage

Read and observe ! on page 176 first.

We recommend checking your tyres and wheel rims for damage (punctures, cuts, splits and bulges, etc.) on a regular basis.

Remove any foreign objects in the tyre tread immediately (e.g. small stones).

Foreign bodies which **have penetrated into the tyre** (e.g. screws or nails) should not be removed and seek help from a specialist garage.

! WARNING

Never drive with damaged tyres – risk of accident.

! CAUTION

The tyres must be protected from contact with substances such as oil, grease and fuel, which could damage them. If the tyres come into contact with these substances, then we recommend you have this checked out in a specialist workshop.

Unidirectional tyres

Read and observe ! on page 176 first.

The direction of rotation of the tyres is marked by **arrows on the wall of the tyre**.

The indicated direction of rotation must be adhered to in order to ensure the optimal characteristics of these tyres.

These characteristics mainly relate to the following:
- Increased driving stability.
- Reduced risk of aquaplaning.
- Reduced tyre noise and tyre wear.

Spare wheel

Read and observe ! on page 176 first.

The size of the spare wheel is identical to that of the vehicle factory installed wheels.

After changing the spare wheel, the tyre pressure should be adjusted.

In vehicles with tyre pressure monitoring, save tyre pressure values» page 141.

WARNING

- If, you get a puncture and a spare tyre has to be mounted with opposite direction of rotation, then drive carefully. The best properties of the tyre are no longer present in this situation.
- If the dimensions or design of the spare wheel differ from the tyres fitted to the vehicle (e.g. winter tyres or low-profile tyres), it must only be used briefly in the event of a puncture and if an appropriately cautious style of driving is adopted.
- Never use the temporary spare wheel if it is damaged.

Spare wheel

Read and observe ! on page 176 first.

A yellow warning label **is** always **displayed** on the rim of the temporary spare wheel.

Please note the following if you intend to use the temporary spare wheel.

- The warning label must not be covered after installing the wheel.
- Be particularly observant when driving.
- The temporary spare wheel is inflated to the maximum inflation pressure for the vehicle » page 176.
- Only use this temporary spare wheel to reach the nearest specialist garage, since it is not intended for permanent use.

If you need to use a spare wheel, make sure to fit a standard wheel of the appropriate dimensions and design as soon as possible.

In vehicles with tyre pressure monitoring, save tyre pressure values» page 141.

WARNING

- Never drive with more than one spare wheel mounted!
- Only use the spare wheel while absolutely necessary.
- Avoid accelerating at full throttle, sharp braking and fast cornering.
- The snow chains cannot be used on the spare wheel.
- If the dimensions or design of the temporary spare wheel differ from the tyres fitted, never drive faster than 80 km/h (or 50 mph).
- Never use the emergency spare wheel if it is damaged.
- Observe instructions on the warning sign of the emergency wheel.

Tyre label

Read and observe ! on page 176 first.

Only use radial tyres of the same type, size (rolling circumference) and tread pattern on one axle on all four wheels.

When mounting new tires the tires have to be replaced axle by axle.

Explanation of tyre markings
For example, **225/50R 17 91 T** means:

225	Tyre width in mm
50	Height/width ratio in %
R	Code letter for the type of tyre – **R**adial
17	Diameter of wheel in inches
91	Load index
T	Speed symbol

The **date of manufacture** is stated on the tyre wall (possibly on the **inside**).

For example, **DOT ... 10 15...** means, for example, that the tyre was manufactured in the 10th week of 2015.

Load index
The load index indicates the maximum permissible load for each individual tyre.

Load index	90	91	92	93	94	95	97
Load (In kg)	600	615	630	650	670	690	730

Speed symbol
The maximum speed symbol indicates the maximum permissible vehicle speed with fitted tyres in each category.

Speed symbol	S	T	U	H	V	W	Y
Maximum speed (in km/h)	180	190	200	210	240	270	300

WARNING

- Never exceed the maximum permissible **load bearing capacity** of mounted tyres.
- Never exceed the maximum permissible **speed** for the mounted tyres.

Winter operation

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Do not use alloy rims with bevelled or polished surfaces during the winter. The rim surface does not have sufficient corrosion protection and could be permanently damaged (e.g. through grit).

Winter tyres

The handling of your vehicle will be significantly improved when driving on wintry roads if you fit winter tyres (labelled **M+S**).

To obtain the best possible handling, winter tyres must be fitted to all four wheels. The minimum tread depth must be 4 mm.

Fit the summer tyres on again in good time as they provide better handling properties, a shorter braking distance, less tyre noise, and reduced tyre wear on roads which are free of snow and ice as well as at temperatures above 7 °C.

Speed symbol
Winter tyres (marked with **M+S** and a peak/snowflake symbol) of a lower speed category can be used provided that the permissible maximum speed of these tyres is not exceeded even if the possible maximum speed of the vehicle is higher.

The speed limit for winter tyres can be set in the MAXI DOT display in the menu item **Winter tyres** » page 47.

Snow chains

When driving in wintry road conditions, snow chains improve not only traction, but also the braking performance.

The use of snow chains on vehicles with front-wheel drive and on vehicles with four-wheel drive differs.

Front-wheel drive
Snow chains must only be mounted on the front wheels.

It is only permissible to fit snow chains with the following wheel/tyre combinations.

Rim size	Press depth D	Tyre size
6J x 16	50 mm	205/55 R16
7J x 16	45 mm	205/55 R16
6J x 17	45 mm	205/50 R17

All-wheel drive
Snow chains can be mounted on the wheels on the front and rear axles.

In order to increase the traction (start-up properties), the use of snow chains is also technically permissible on the rear axle (this means on the front and rear axle at the same time).

It is only permissible to fit snow chains on the front wheels with the following wheel/tyre combinations.

Rim size	Press depth D	Tyre size
6J x 16	50 mm	205/55 R16
7J x 16	45 mm	205/55 R16
6J x 17	45 mm	205/50 R17

It is only permissible to fit snow chains exclusively on the rear wheels with the following wheel/tyre combinations.

Rim size	Press depth D	Tyre size
7J x 16	45 mm	215/60 R16
7J x 17	45 mm	225/50 R17

Only fit snow chains with links and locks not larger than 12 mm.

Remove the full wheel trims before installing the snow chains » page 183.

CAUTION
The chains must be removed when driving on snow-free paths. They would otherwise cause loss of performance and damage the tyres.

Do-it-yourself

Emergency equipment and self-help

Emergency equipment

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

First aid kit and warning triangle

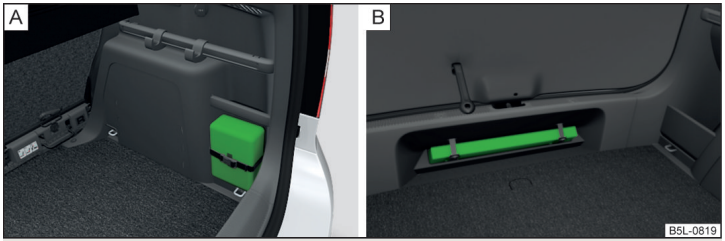

Fig. 176 **Location of the first-aid kit and the warning triangle**

The following information applies for the first aid kit and warning triangle from the ŠKODA Original Accessories.

The storage compartments may be too small for other first aid kits and warning triangles.

First-aid box
The first-aid box can be attached by a strap to the right-hand side of the boot » Fig. 176 - A.

Warning triangle
The warning triangle can be attached to the rear wall trim panel with rubber straps » Fig. 176 - B.

The warning triangle, which is included in the equipment with the spare wheel, can be stowed in a removable box on the right next to the spare wheel » page 102.

! WARNING

The first-aid kit and warning triangle must always be secured safely so that they do not come loose when making an emergency braking or in a vehicle collision which could cause injuries to occupants.

i Note

- Pay attention to the expiration date of the first-aid kit.
- We recommend using a first-aid kit from ŠKODA Original Accessories, which are available from a ŠKODA Partner.

Reflective vest

Fig. 177
Storage compartment for the reflective vest

The reflective vest can be stowed in a holder under the driver's seat » Fig. 177.

Fire extinguisher

Fig. 178
Fire extinguisher

The fire extinguisher is attached by two straps in a holder underneath the driver's seat.

Removing/attaching

› Loosen the two straps by pulling the buckles in the direction of the arrow » Fig. 178.
› Remove the fire extinguisher.
› Secure the fire extinguisher by placing it back into the holder and fastening with straps.

Please read the instructions which are attached to the fire extinguisher.

Pay attention to the expiration date of the fire extinguisher. If the fire extinguisher is used after the expiration date, its proper function is not assured.

WARNING

The fire extinguisher must always be secured safely so that they do not come loose when making an emergency braking or in a vehicle collision which could cause injuries to occupants.

Note

The fire extinguisher is part of the scope of delivery in certain countries only.

Vehicle tool kit

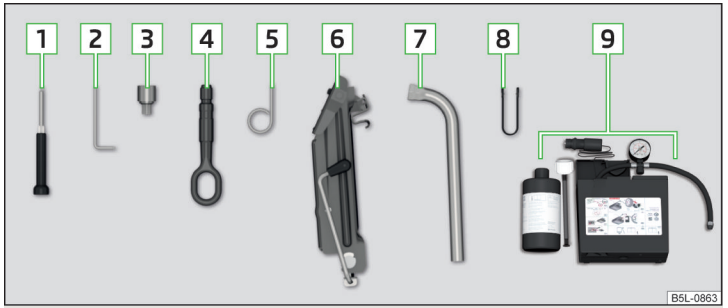

Fig. 179 **Vehicle tool kit**

The tool kit is housed in a box in the spare or emergency wheel compartment or in this storage space.

Depending on the vehicle configuration, it may not contain all the components listed in the on-board tool kit.

1 Screwdriver
2 Key for removing and installing the tail light
3 Adapter for anti-theft wheel bolts
4 Towing eye
5 Clamps for removing the wheel trims
6 Jack with sign
7 Wheel wrench
8 Extraction pliers for wheel bolt caps
9 Breakdown kit

WARNING

The factory-supplied lifting jack is only intended for your model of vehicle. Under no circumstances attempt to lift heavier vehicles or other loads.

CAUTION

- Screw the jack back into the starting position before storing in the box with the tool kit.
- Ensure that the vehicle tool kit is safely secured in the boot.
- Ensure that the box is always secured with the strap.

Note

The declaration of conformity is included with the jack or the log folder.

Changing a wheel

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

For your own safety and the safety of the passengers, the following instructions must be observed before changing a wheel on the road.

- ✓ Switch on the hazard warning lights system.
- ✓ Place the warning triangle at the prescribed distance.
- ✓ Park the vehicle as far away as possible from flowing traffic.
- ✓ Choose a location with a flat, solid surface.
- ✓ Have **all the occupants get out.** The passengers should not stand on the road (instead they should remain behind a crash barrier, for instance) while the wheel is being changed.

Tyres with increased puncture resistance
Some vehicles may be fitted with tyres at the factory that have increased puncture resistance ("SEAL" tyres).

These vehicles are delivered without a puncture repair kit, spare wheel and appropriate hand tools.

If tyres with increased puncture resistance are replaced with tyres that have no increased puncture resistance, then the vehicle should be equipped with a puncture repair kit, spare wheel and appropriate hand tools.

Preparation

Before changing the wheel, the following work must be carried out.

- › Switch off the engine.
- › For vehicles with **manual transmission** select 1st **gear**.
- › On vehicles with **automatic transmission** place the selector lever in the **P** position.
- › Firmly apply the handbrake.
- › Uncouple any trailers.

Removing/stowing the wheel

Fig. 180
Take out wheel

The spare wheel is located in a well under the floor covering in the boot and is fixed in place with a fastening screw.

Take out wheel
- › Open the boot lid.
- › Raise the floor covering in the boot » page 102.
- › Loosen the belt and take out the box with the tool kit.
- › Unscrew the fastening screw in direction of arrow » Fig. 180.
- › Remove the wheel.

Store wheel away
- › Place the wheel into the spare wheel well with the wheel rim pointing upwards.
- › Pull the fixing band through the opposite holes in the wheel rim.
- › Screw on the fastening screw in the opposite direction to the arrow » Fig. 180 until the wheel is safely secured.
- › Replace the box with the tool kit into the emergency or spare wheel and secure it with the tape.
- › Fold back the floor in the luggage compartment.
- › Shut the boot lid.

Full wheel trim

Before removing the wheel bolts, remove the wheel cover.

Extracting
- › Hook the clamp found in the vehicle tool kit » page 182 into the reinforced edge of the wheel trim.
- › Push the wheel wrench through the clamp, support on the tyre and pull off the wheel trim.

Fitting

› Press the wheel trim onto the wheel rim at the designated valve opening.
› Then press the trim into the wheel rim until its entire circumference locks correctly in place.

Notes from the factory or from the ŠKODA Original accessory delivered trim.

▸ When using an anti-theft wheel bolt, make sure that this has been fitted according to the position marked on the back of the wheel cover position.
▸ On the back of the wheel cover, the position for the anti-theft wheel bolt is marked by means of a symbol. If the wheel cover is set outside the position marked for the anti-theft wheel bolt, there is a risk of damaging the wheel cover.

If wheel trims are fitted, an adequate flow of air must be assured in order to cool the brake system.

CAUTION

Use the pressure of your hand only, do not strike the full wheel trim. The cover could be damaged.

Note

We recommend that you use wheel trims from ŠKODA Original Accessories.

Wheel bolts

Fig. 181
Remove the cap

Before removing the wheel bolts, remove the covering caps.

Extracting

› Push the extraction pliers » page 182 sufficiently far onto the cap until the inner catches of the pliers are positioned at the collar of the cap.
› Remove the cap in the direction of the arrow » Fig. 181.

Fitting

› Push the caps onto the wheel bolts up to the stop.

Anti-theft wheel bolts

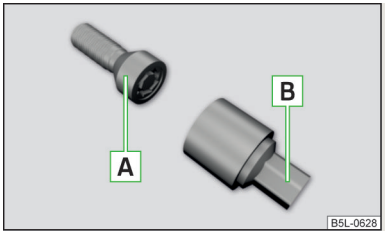

Fig. 182
Principle sketch: Anti-theft wheel bolt with adapter

The anti-theft wheel bolts protect the wheels from theft. These can only be loosened or tightened with the use of adapter B » Fig. 182.

› Remove the full wheel trim or the caps of the wheel bolts.
› Insert adapter B » Fig. 182 with the toothed side all the way into the inner teeth in the head of the anti-theft wheel bolts A.
› Push the wheel wrench onto the adapter B up to the stop.
› Loosen or tighten the wheel bolt » page 185.
› Remove the adapter.
› Replace the wheel trim or the caps.

To be equipped for a possible wheel change, the adapter for the anti-theft wheel bolts must always be kept in the vehicle. The adapter is stowed in the tool kit.

The position of the anti-theft wheel bolt is marked on the back of the wheel cover with every ŠKODA supplied original equipment hub cap or directly at the factors.

When using an anti-theft wheel bolt, make sure that this has been fitted according to the position marked on the back of the wheel cover position.

Note

▪ Note the code number which is embossed both on the adapter and also on the end of each anti-theft wheel bolt. This number can be used to purchase a replacement adapter from ŠKODA Original Parts if necessary.
▪ The anti-theft wheel bolt set and adapter can be purchased from a ŠKODA Partner.

Loosening/tightening wheel bolts

Fig. 183
Changing a wheel: Loosening the wheel bolts

Before removing the wheel bolts, the caps for the wheel bolts must be pulled off.

Release

› Push the wheel wrench onto the wheel bolt until it locks into place.

Use the appropriate adapter for undoing the anti-theft wheel bolts » page 184.

› Grasp the end of the wrench and turn the bolt about **one** turn in the direction of the arrow » Fig. 183.

Tightening

› Push the wheel wrench onto the wheel bolt until it locks into place.

Use the appropriate adapter for tightening the anti-theft wheel bolts » page 184.

› Grasp the end of the wrench and turn the bolt against the direction of the arrow » Fig. 183, until it is tight.

After tightening the wheel bolts, the covering caps must be replaced.

! WARNING

If it proves difficult to undo the bolts, carefully apply pressure to the end of the wrench with your **foot**. Keep hold of the vehicle when doing so, and make sure you keep your footing.

Raising the vehicle

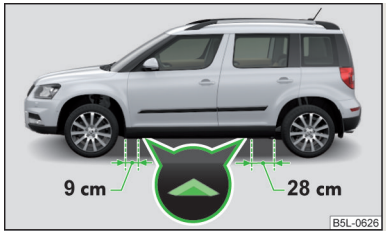

Fig. 184
Jacking points for positioning lifting jack

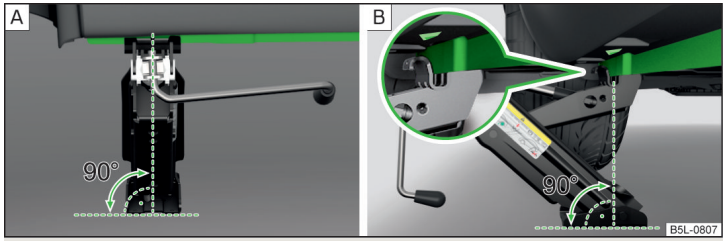

Fig. 185 **Principle sketch: Attach lifting jack**

Use the jack from the tool kit to raise the vehicle.

Position the car jack at the jacking point closest to the flat tyre .

The mounting points are located directly below the mark on the lower beam » Fig. 184.

› Support the base plate of the jack with its full area resting on level ground and ensure that the jack is located in a vertical position at the jacking point » Fig. 185 - A.
› Position the lifting jack below the jacking point with the crank and move it up until its claw encloses the web » Fig. 185 - B.
› Continue turning up the jack until the wheel is just about lifted off the ground.

WARNING

- If the wheel has to be changed on a slope, first of all block the opposite wheel with a stone or similar object to prevent the vehicle from unexpectedly rolling away.
- Secure the base plate of the lifting jack with suitable means to prevent possible moving. A soft and slippery ground under the base plate may move the lifting jack, causing the vehicle to fall down. It is therefore always necessary to place the lifting jack on a solid surface or use a wide and stable base. If the surface is smooth, such as on cobbled stones, tiled floor, etc., use a non-slip base (e.g. a rubber foot mat).
- Only attach the lifting jack to the attachment points provided for this purpose.
- Always raise the vehicle with the doors closed.
- Never position any body parts, such as arms or legs under the vehicle, while the vehicle is raised with a lifting jack.
- When the vehicle is raised, never start the engine.

CAUTION

It is important to ensure that the jack is correctly attached to the web of the lower fork leg - risk of damage to the vehicle.

Remove the wheel / fix

When changing a wheel, the following instructions must be followed.

› Remove the full wheel trim or the caps of the wheel bolts.
› First of all slacken the anti-theft wheel bolt and then the other wheel bolts.
› Jack up the vehicle until the wheel that needs changing is clear of the ground.
› Unscrew the wheel bolts and place them on a clean surface (cloth, paper, etc.).
› Remove the wheel carefully.
› Attach the wheel and slightly screw on the wheel bolts.
› Lower the vehicle.
› Tighten the wheel bolts opposite each other using the wheel wrench (alternating crosswise). Tighten the anti-theft wheel bolt last.
› Replace the wheel trim or the caps.

When fitting unidirectional tyres, ensure that the direction of rotation is correct » page 178.

All bolts must be clean and must turn easily.

If it is established when changing a wheel that the wheel bolts are corroded and difficult to move, then these must be replaced.

Under no circumstances grease or oil the wheel bolts.

WARNING

Undo the wheel bolts only a little (about one turn) as long as the vehicle has not yet been jacked up. Otherwise the wheel could become loose and fall off.

Follow-up tasks

After changing the wheel, the following work must be carried out.

› Stow the replaced wheel in the wheel well and secure it with a special nut.
› Stow the tool kit in the space provided and secure using the band.
› Check the tyre pressure on the fitted wheel as soon as possible.
› Have the tightening torque of the wheel bolts checked with a torque wrench as soon as possible.

After changing the wheel, the tyre pressure should be adjusted. In vehicles with tyre pressure monitoring, save tyre pressure values» page 141.

Replace the damaged wheel or consult a specialist garage about repair options.

The prescribed tightening torque of the wheel bolts is **120 Nm**.

WARNING

- If the wheel bolts are tightened to a too low tightening torque, the rim can come loose when the car is moving. A tightening torque which is too high can damage the bolts and threads and this can result in permanent deformation of the contact surfaces on the rim.
- Drive cautiously and only at a moderate speed until the tightening torque has been checked.

Puncture repair kit

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Use the breakdown kit to reliably repair tyre damage caused by foreign bodies or a puncture with diameters up to approx. 4 mm.

Performing a repair with the breakdown kit **not at all intended to replace** a permanent repair on the tyre. Its purpose is to get you to the nearest specialist garage.

The wheel must not be removed during repair.

Do not remove foreign bodies that have penetrated the wheel profile from the tyre (e.g. screws or nails).

Immediately replace the tyre that was repaired using the breakdown kit, or consult a specialist garage about repair options.

! WARNING

- The sealant is hazardous to heath. Remove immediately if it comes into contact with the skin.
- Observe the manufacturer's usage instructions for the breakdown kit.

i Note

A new bottle of sealant can be purchased from ŠKODA Original Parts.

Components of the puncture repair kits

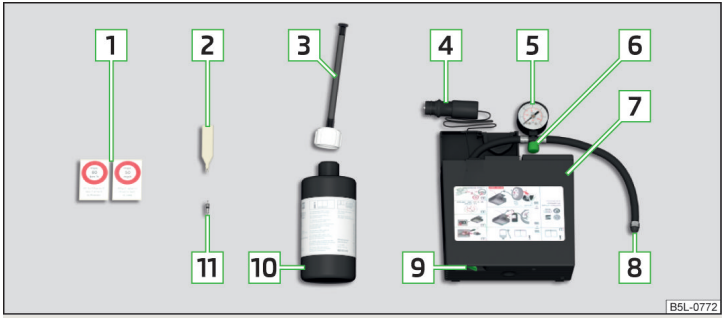

Fig. 186 **Principle sketch: Components of the breakdown kit**

Read and observe ! on page 187 first.

Kit components » Fig. 186

1 Sticker with speed designation "max. 80 km/h"/"max. 50 mph"
2 Valve remover
3 Inflation hose with plug
4 12 volt cable connector
5 Tyre inflation pressure indicator
6 Air release valve
7 Air compressor
8 Tyre inflation hose
9 ON and OFF switch
10 Tyre inflator bottle with sealing agent
11 Replacement valve core

The valve remover 2 has a slot at its lower end which fits into the valve core.

The kit is located in a box under the floor covering in the luggage compartment. The kit contains a sealant and an air compressor.

i Note

The declaration of conformity is included with the air compressor or the log folder.

General information

Read and observe ! on page 187 first.

For your own safety and the safety of your passengers, the following instructions must be observed before carrying out a wheel repair on the road.

✓ Switch on the hazard warning lights system.
✓ Place the warning triangle at the prescribed distance.
✓ Park the vehicle as far away as possible from flowing traffic.
✓ Choose a location with a flat, solid surface.
✓ Have **all the occupants get out.** The passengers should not stand on the road (instead they should remain behind a crash barrier, for instance) while the wheel is being changed.

The breakdown kit must not be used under the following circumstances.

▸ The rim is damaged.
▸ The outside temperature is below -20 ° C.

▸ The cut or puncture is larger than 4 mm.
▸ The tyre wall is damaged.
▸ After the expiration date (see inflation bottle).

Preparations for using the breakdown kit

Read and observe ! on page 187 first.

The following preparatory work must be carried out before using the puncture repair kit.

› Switch off the engine.
› For vehicles with **manual transmission** select 1st **gear**.
› On vehicles with **automatic transmission** place the selector lever in the **P** position.
› Firmly apply the handbrake.
› Check that you can carry out the repairs with the breakdown kit » page 186.
› Uncouple any trailers.
› Remove the breakdown kit from the boot.
› Stick the sticker 1 » Fig. 186 *on page 187* on the dashboard in the driver's field of view.
› Unscrew the valve cap.
› Use the valve remover 2 to unscrew the valve core and place it on a clean surface (rag, paper, etc.).

Sealing and inflating the tyre

Read and observe ! on page 187 first.

Sealing

› Forcefully shake the tyre inflater bottle 10 » Fig. 186 *on page 187* back and forth several times.
› Firmly screw the inflation hose 3 onto the tyre inflater bottle 10. The film on the cap is pierced automatically.
› Remove the plug from the inflation hose 3 and plug the open end fully onto the tyre valve.
› Hold the bottle 10 with the bottom facing upwards and fill all of the sealing agent from the tyre inflator bottle into the tyre.
› Remove the filler plug from the tyre valve.
› Screw the valve core back into the tyre valve using the valve remover 2.

Inflating

› Screw the air compressor tyre inflation hose 8 » Fig. 186 *on page 187* firmly onto the tyre valve.
› For vehicles with **Manual transmission** move the lever into the neutral position and apply the parking brake firmly.
› On vehicles with **automatic transmission** place the selector lever in the **P** position.
› Check that the air release valve 6 is closed.
› Start the engine and run it in idle.
› Plug the connector 4 into 12 volt socket » page 88.
› Switch on the air compressor with the ON and OFF switch 9.
› Allow the air compressor to run until a pressure of 2.0 - 2.5 bar is achieved. Maximum run time of 8 minutes » !.
› Switch off the air compressor.
› If you cannot reach an air pressure of 2.0 - 2.5 bar, unscrew the tyre inflation hose 8 from the tyre valve.
› Drive the vehicle 10 metres forwards or backwards to allow the sealing agent to "distribute" in the tyre.
› Firmly screw the tyre inflation hose 8 back onto the tyre valve and repeat the inflation process.
› Switch off the air compressor.
› Remove the tyre inflation hose 8 from the tyre valve.

Once a tyre inflation pressure of 2.0 - 2.5 bar has been achieved, you can continue the journey.

! WARNING

▪ If the tyre does not inflate to at least. 2.0 bar, the damage is too great. The sealing agent cannot be used to seal the tyre. Do not drive the vehicle! Seek help from a specialist garage.
▪ The tyre inflation hose and air compressor may get hot as the tyre is being inflated – risk of burning.

! CAUTION

Switch off the air compressor after running 8 minutes at the latest – risk of overheating! Allow the air compressor to cool a few minutes before switching it on again.

Notes for driving with repaired tyres

Read and observe ! on page 187 first.

The inflation pressure of the repaired tyre must be checked after driving for 10 minutes.

If the tyre inflation pressure is 1.3 bar or less

› **Do not continue to drive!** You cannot properly seal with tyre with the breakdown kit.

If the tyre inflation pressure is 1.3 bar or more

› Set the tyre pressure to the correct value.
› Continue driving carefully to the nearest specialist garage at a maximum speed of 80 km/h (50 mph).

! WARNING

- A tyre filled with sealant has the same driving characteristics as a standard tyre.
- Do not drive faster than 80 km/h (50 mph).
- Avoid accelerating at full throttle, sharp braking and fast cornering.

Jump-starting

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

The battery of another vehicle can be used to jump-start your vehicle if the engine will not start because the battery is flat.

! WARNING

- Pay attention to the warning instructions relating to working in the engine compartment » page 165.
- A discharged vehicle battery may already freeze at temperatures just below 0 °C. If the battery is frozen, do not carry out a jump start with the battery of another vehicle – risk of explosion!
- Keep any sources of ignition (naked flame, smouldering cigarettes, etc.) away from the battery – risk of explosion!

! WARNING (Continued)

- Never jump-start vehicle batteries with an electrolyte level that is too low – risk of explosion and caustic burns.
- The vent screws of the battery cells must be tightened firmly.

i Note

We recommend you buy jump-start cables from a car battery specialist.

Jump-starting using the battery from another vehicle

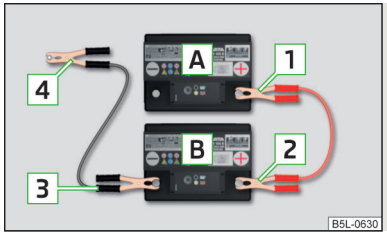

Fig. 187
Jump-starting: A – flat battery, B – battery providing current

Fig. 188
Engine earth: START-STOP system

Read and observe ! on page 189 first.

The starting process using the battery of another vehicle requires the use of jumper cables.

The jump-start cables must be attached in the following sequence.

› Attach clamp 1 to the positive terminal of the discharged battery A » Fig. 187.
› Attach clamp 2 to the positive terminal of the battery supplying power B.
› Attach clamp 3 to the negative terminal of the battery supplying power B.

› Attach the clamp 4 to a solid metal part which is connected firmly to the engine block or to the engine block itself.

The jump-start cable must be connected to the engine earthing point only on vehicles with the START-STOP system » Fig. 188.

Starting engine
› Start the engine on the vehicle providing the power and allow it to idle.
› Start the engine of the vehicle with the discharged battery.
› If the engine does not start, terminate the attempt to start the engine after 10 seconds and wait for 30 seconds before repeating the process.
› Remove the jump start cables in the **reverse** order as attachment.

Both batteries must have a rated voltage of 12 V. The **capacity** (Ah) of the battery supplying the power must not be significantly less than the capacity of the discharged battery in your vehicle.

Jump-start cables
Only use jump-start cables which have an adequately large cross-section and insulated terminal clamps. Observe the instructions of the jumper lead manufacturer.

Positive cable - colour coding in the majority of cases is red.

Negative cable - colour coding in the majority of cases is black.

WARNING
- Do not clamp the jump-start cable to the negative terminal of the discharged battery. There is the risk of detonating gas seeping out the battery being ignited by the strong spark which results from the engine being started.
- The non-insulated parts of the terminal clamps must never touch each other – risk of short circuit!
- The jump-start cable connected to the positive terminal of the battery must not come into contact with electrically conducting parts of the vehicle – risk of short circuit!
- Route the jump-start cables so that they cannot be caught by any rotating parts in the engine compartment.

Towing the vehicle

Introduction

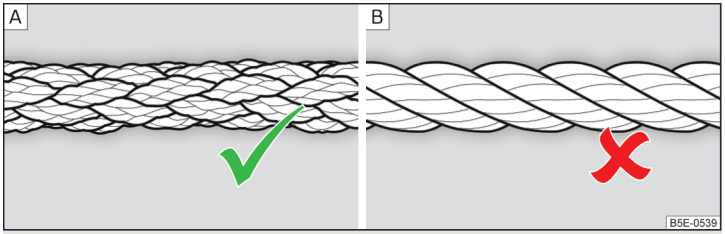

Fig. 189 **Braided tow rope / Spiral tow rope**

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

For towing, a braided tow rope is to be used » Fig. 189 - A.

When towing, the following guidelines must be observed.

Vehicles with **manual transmission** may be towed in with a tow bar or a tow rope or with the front or rear wheels raised.

Vehicles with **Automatic transmission** may be towed in with a tow bar or a tow rope or with the front wheels raised. If the vehicle is raised at rear, the automatic gearbox is damaged! If possible, the vehicle should be towed with the engine running or at least with the ignition on.

Driver of the tow vehicle
› Engage the clutch gently when starting off or depress the accelerator particularly gently if the vehicle is fitted with an automatic gearbox.
› Only then approach correctly when the rope is taut.

The maximum towing speed is **50 km/h**.

Driver of the towed vehicle
› Switch on the ignition so that the steering wheel is not locked and so that the turn-signal lights, windscreen wipers and windscreen washer system can be used.

› Take the vehicle out of gear or move the selector lever into position **N** if the vehicle is fitted with an automatic gearbox.

Please note that the brake servo unit and power steering only operate if the engine is running. If the engine is not running, significantly more physical force is required to depress the brake pedal and steer the vehicle.

If using a tow rope, ensure that it is always kept taught.

General information on towing
Both drivers should be familiar with the problems which might occur while a vehicle is being towed. Unskilled drivers should not attempt to tow in another vehicle or to be towed in.

The vehicle must be transported on a special breakdown vehicle or trailer if it is not possible to tow in the vehicle in the way described or if the towing distance is greater than 50 km.

If the gearbox has no oil, your vehicle must be towed with the front axle raised clear of the ground or on a breakdown vehicle or trailer.

To protect both vehicles when tow-starting or towing, the tow rope should be elastic. Thus one should only use plastic fibre rope or a rope made out of a similarly elastic material.

Attach the tow rope or the tow bar to the **towing eyes** » page 191 or » page 192 to the **detachable ball head of the towing device** » page 141.

WARNING
- When towing, exercise increased caution.
- Do not use spiral rope for towing » Fig. 189- B, the towing eye may unscrew from the vehicle - risk of accident.
- Ensure tow rope is not twisted - risk of accident.

CAUTION
- Do not start engine by towing - there is a risk of damaging the engine parts. The battery from another vehicle can be used as a jump-start aid » page 189, *Jump-starting*.
- There is always a risk of excessive stresses and damage resulting at the points to which you attach the tow rope or tow bar when you attempt to tow a vehicle which is not standing on a paved road.

Note
We recommend using a tow rope from ŠKODA Original Accessories, which is available from a ŠKODA Partner.

Front towing eye

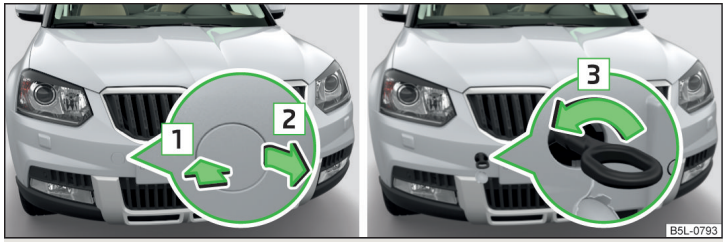

Fig. 190 **Removing the cap / fitting the towing eye**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 191 first.

Removing/installing the cap
› Press on the fuel filler flap in the direction of the arrow 1 » Fig. 190.
› Remove the cap in the direction of the arrow 2.
› After unscrewing the cap of the towing eye, insert the cap in the region of the arrow 1 and then press the opposite side of the cap.

The cap must engage firmly.

Removing/installing the towing eye
› Manually screw the towing eye as far as it will go in the direction of the arrow 3 » Fig. 190 » !.

For tightening purposes, we recommend, for example, using the wheel wrench, towing eye from another vehicle or a similar object that can be pushed through the eye.

› Unscrew the towing eye against the direction of the arrow 3.

WARNING
The towing eye must always be screwed in fully and firmly tightened, otherwise the towing eye can tear when towing in or tow-starting.

Rear towing eye

Fig. 191 **Removing the cap / fitting the towing eye**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 191 first.

Removing/installing the cap

› Press on the fuel filler flap in the direction of the arrow 1 » Fig. 191.
› Remove the cap in the direction of the arrow 2.
› After unscrewing the towing eye, insert the cap in the area of arrow 1.
› Press the opposite side of the cap.

The cap must engage firmly.

Removing/installing the towing eye

› Manually screw the towing eye as far as it will go in the direction of the arrow 3 » Fig. 191 » !.

For tightening purposes, we recommend, for example, using the wheel wrench, towing eye from another vehicle or a similar object that can be pushed through the eye.

› Unscrew the towing eye against the direction of the arrow 3.

! WARNING

The towing eye must always be screwed in fully and firmly tightened, otherwise the towing eye can tear when towing in or tow-starting.

Vehicles with a tow hitch

Read and observe ! and ! on page 191 first.

On vehicles with a factory-fitted towing device, there is no mount for the screw-in towing eye behind the cap.

Use the built-in detachable ball rod for towing » page 141, *Hitch*.

Towing the vehicle using the towing device is a viable alternative solution to using the towing eye.

If the towing device is removed completely, it must be replaced with the standard reinforcement of the rear bumper which is part of the mount for the towing eye.

! CAUTION

The detachable ball rod and/or the vehicle can be damaged if an unsuitable tow bar is used.

i Note

The detachable ball rod must always be in the vehicle so that it can be used for towing, if necessary.

Remote control and removable light

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

! CAUTION

- We recommend having faulty rechargeable batteries or batteries replaced by a ŠKODA service partner.
- The replacement battery or the replacement rechargeable battery should have the specifications of the original battery or original rechargeable battery.
- Pay attention to the correct polarity when changing the rechargeable batteries.

i Note

If a key has an affixed decorative cover, this will be destroyed when the battery is replaced. A replacement cover can be purchased from a ŠKODA Partner.

Replacing the battery in the remote control key

Fig. 192 **Remove cover/take out battery**

Read and observe ! on page 192 first.

The battery change is carried out as follows.

› Flip out the key.
› Press off the battery cover A » Fig. 192 with your thumb or using a flat screwdriver in the region of the arrows 1.
› Remove the discharged battery from the key by pressing the battery down in the region of the arrow 2.
› Insert the new battery.
› Insert the battery cover A and press it down until it clicks audibly into place.

The key has to be synchronised if the vehicle cannot be unlocked or locked with the remote control key after replacing the battery » page 193.

Synchronising the remote control

Read and observe ! on page 192 first.

If the vehicle does not unlock when pressing the remote control, the key may not be synchronised. This can occur when the buttons on the remote control key are actuated a number of times outside of the operative range of the equipment or the battery in the remote control key has been replaced.

Synchronise the key as follows.

› Press any button on the remote control key.
› Unlock the door with the key in the lock cylinder within 1 minute of pressing the button.

replace battery in the remote control the auxiliary heating (auxiliary heating)

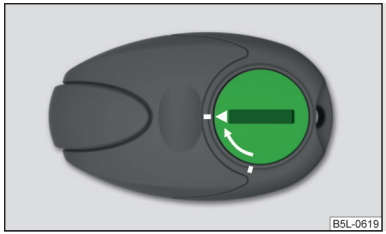

Fig. 193
Radio remote control: Battery cover

Read and observe ! on page 192 first.

The battery is located under a cover on the back of the radio remote control » Fig. 193.

› Insert a flat, blunt object, such as a coin, into the gap of the battery cover.
› Turn the cover against the direction of the arrow up to the mark to open the cover.
› Replace the battery.
› Return the battery cover.
› Turn the cover in the direction of the arrow up to the initial marking, engage.

replace batteries of the removable lights

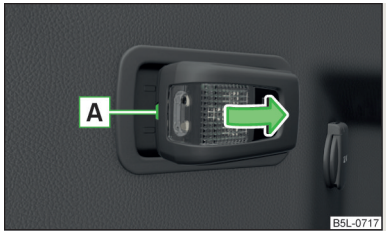

Fig. 194
Taking out the lamp

Read and observe ! on page 192 first.

The battery change is carried out as follows.

› Take out the light in the direction of arrow » Fig. 194.

› Lever off the cover for the rechargeable batteries with a narrow and pointed object from the area of the lock clips A.
› Take out the faulty rechargeable batteries from the lamp.
› Insert the new rechargeable batteries.
› Insert the cover for the rechargeable batteries and press it down until it clicks into place.

CAUTION

If an incorrect rechargeable battery is used or a non-rechargeable battery, there is a risk of damaging the lamp and the vehicle's electrical system.

Emergency unlocking/locking

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Unlocking/locking the driver's door

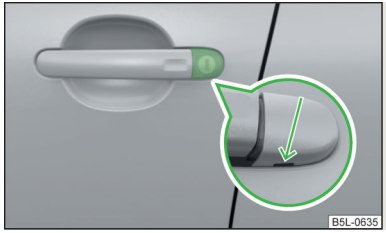

Fig. 195
Handle on the driver's door: covered key cylinder

The driver's door can be unlocked or locked in an emergency.

› Pull on the door handle and hold in place.
› Insert the vehicle key into the slot on the bottom of the cover in the arrow area » Fig. 195.
› Fold the cover upwards.
› Release the door handle.
› Insert the vehicle key bit into the lock cylinder and unlock or lock the vehicle.

Pull on the door handle and replace the cover in its original location.

CAUTION

Make sure you do not damage the paint when performing an emergency locking/unlocking.

Locking the door without a locking cylinder

Fig. 196 **Emergency locking: Left/right rear door**

An emergency locking mechanism is located on the face side of the doors which have no locking cylinder, it is only visible after opening the door.

› Remove the cover A » Fig. 196.
› Insert the vehicle key into the slot and turn in the direction of the arrow (sprung position).
› Replace the cover A.

Unlock the boot lid

Fig. 197
Unlocking the boot lid

The boot lid can be unlocked manually.

› Fold the rear seat backrest forward » page 80.

› Insert a screwdriver or similar tool into the opening in the trim » Fig. 197 as far as the stop.
› Unlock the lid by moving it in the direction of the arrow.
› Open the boot lid.

Selector lever-emergency unlocking

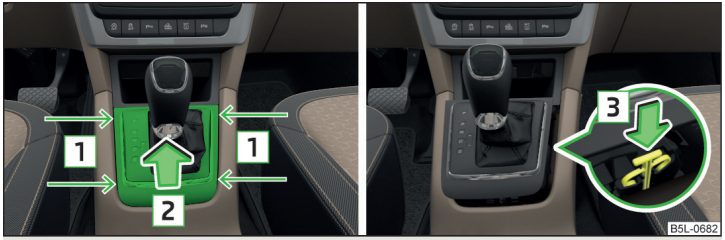

Fig. 198 **Selector lever-emergency unlocking**

› Firmly apply the handbrake.
› Insert a flat-head screwdriver into the gap in the arrow range 1 » Fig. 198 and lift the cover in arrow direction 2.
› Use a finger to press the yellow plastic part in the direction of the arrow 3.
› At the same time, press the locking button in the selector lever and move the selector lever to position **N**.

If the selector lever is moved again to position **P**, it is once again blocked.

CAUTION

Make sure when lifting not to damage cover parts by the screwdriver in the shift lever environment.

Replacing windscreen wiper blades

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

WARNING

Replace the windscreen wiper blades once or twice a year for safety reasons. These can be purchased from a ŠKODA Partner.

Replacing front windscreen wipers

Fig. 199 **Windscreen wiper blade**

Read and observe ! on page 195 first.

When in the rest position, the wiper arms cannot be fold down from the windscreen. Before replacing the windscreen wiper blade, put the windscreen wiper arms into the service position.

Service position for changing wiper blades
› Closing the bonnet.
› Switch the ignition on and off again.
› Press the control lever in position 4 within 10 seconds » page 72.

The windscreen wiper arms move into the service position.

Removing the wiper blade
› Lift the wiper arm from the windscreen in the direction of 1 » Fig. 199.
› Press the securing clip A in the direction of arrow 2 to unlock the wiper blade.
› Remove the wiper blade in the direction of the arrow 3.

Attaching the windscreen wiper blade
› Push the windscreen wiper blade to the stop until it locks into place.
› Check that the windscreen wiper blade is correctly attached.
› Fold the wiper arms back to the windscreen.

The windscreen wiper arms move back into the rest position - after switching on the ignition and changing the position of the window wiper lever or when driving at a speed of more than 6°km/h.

CAUTION

If the windscreen wipers are handled carelessly, there is a risk of damage to the windscreen.

Replacing the rear window wiper blade

Fig. 200 **Rear window wiper blade**

Read and observe ! on page 195 first.

Removing the wiper blade

› Lift the wiper arm from the windscreen in the direction of 1 » Fig. 200.
› Tilt the wiper blade to the stop in the same direction.
› Hold the upper part of the wiper arm and press the securing mechanism A in the direction of arrow 2.
› Remove the wiper blade in the direction of the arrow 3.

Attaching the windscreen wiper blade

› Push the windscreen wiper blade to the stop until it locks into place.
› Check that the windscreen wiper blade is correctly attached.
› Fold the wiper arm back to the windscreen.

Fuses and light bulbs

Fuses

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Individual electrical circuits are protected by fuses.

Switch off the ignition and the corresponding power consuming device before replacing a fuse.

Find out which fuse belongs to the component that is not operating » page 197, *Fuses in the dash panel* or » page 198, *Fuses in the engine compartment*.

Colour coding of fuses

Fuse colour	Maximum amperage
light brown	5
dark brown	7.5
red	10
blue	15
yellow	20
white	25
green	30
orange	40
red	50

WARNING

Always read and observe the warnings before completing any work in the engine compartment » page 165.

CAUTION

- "Never repair" fuses, and do not replace them with fuses of a higher amperage – risk of fire! This may also cause damage at another part of the electrical system.
- If a newly inserted fuse blows again after a short time, have the electrical system checked as quickly as possible by a specialist garage.
- A blown fuses is recognisable by the molten metal strip. Replace the faulty fuse with a new one of the **same** amperage.

Note

- We recommend always carrying replacement fuses in the vehicle. A box of replacement fuses and bulbs can be purchased from ŠKODA Original Accessories.
- There can be several power consuming devices for one fuse.
- Multiple fuses may exist for a single power consuming device.

Fuses in the dash panel

Fig. 201
Distribution board cover.

Read and observe and on page 196 first.

The fuses are located on the left side of the dash panel behind a cover.

Replacing fuses

› Insert a screwdriver into the opening in the cover in the direction of the arrow » Fig. 201.
› Remove the cover of the fuse box and remove.
› Remove the plastic clip from the holder in the fuse box cover in the dash panel.
› Place the clip on the respective fuse and pull this fuse out.
› Insert a new fuse.
› Replace the bracket at the original position.
› Re-insert the cover of the fuse box .

Assignment of the fuses in the dash panel

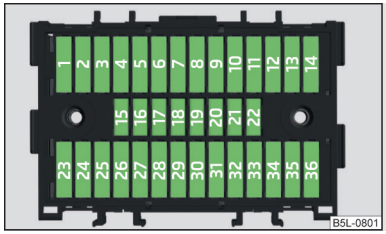

Fig. 202
Fuses

Read and observe and on page 196 first.

No.	Consumer
1	Heating of the gearbox vent (diesel engine) Automatic gearbox DSG
2	Towing hitch - left light
3	Towing hitch - right light
4	Instrument cluster control lever under the steering wheel, camera
5	Air blower for heating, radiator fan, air conditioning system, Climatronic
6	Rear window wiper
7	Phone
8	Towing hitch - contact in the socket
9	Interior lighting, rear fog light
10	Rain sensor, light switch, diagnostic socket
11	Left side cornering lights
12	Right side cornering lights
13	Radio, DVD
14	Central control unit, engine control unit
15	Light switch
16	Haldex
17	KESSY, steering lock
18	Diagnostic socket, engine control unit, brake sensor, Haldex

No.	Consumer
19	ABS, ESP, switch for tyre air pressure control, parking aid, switch for OFF ROAD mode, START STOP button
20	Switch, airbag
21	WIV, tail lamp, dimming mirror, pressure sensor, telephone preparation, air mass sensor, headlight range control and headlight tilt
22	Instrument cluster, electromechanical power steering, databus
23	Central locking system and bonnet lid
24	Rear power window
25	Rear window heater, auxiliary heating and ventilation
26	Power socket in the boot
27	Panorama window - sliding / tilting roof, electric sunblind
28	Fuel pump, injectors, AdBlue® heating
29	Front power window
30	front and rear lighter
31	Headlight cleaning system
32	Front seat heating, regulator for seat heating
33	Heating, air conditioning, Climatronic, remote control for auxiliary heating
34	Alarm, spare horn
35	Automatic gearbox DSG
36	Tow hitch

Fuses in the engine compartment

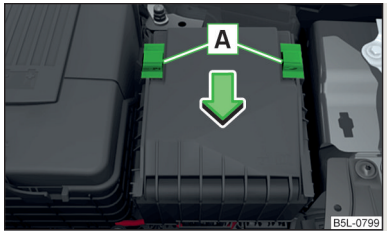

Fig. 203
Distribution board cover.

Read and observe ! and ! on page 196 first.

With some equipment, the battery cover must be opened before removing the cover for the fuse box » page 173.

Replacing fuses

› Turn the securing bracket A » Fig. 203 in direction of the arrow.

The symbol is displayed behind the catches.

› Remove the cover.
› Replace the appropriate fuse.
› Replace the cover on the fuse box and the safety clip A move against the arrow.

The symbol is displayed behind the catches.

The cover is locked into position.

! CAUTION

The cover for the fuse box in the engine compartment must always be applied correctly. Water may get into the fuse box if the cover is not replaced properly - there is a risk of damage to the vehicle!

Assignment of fuses in the engine compartment

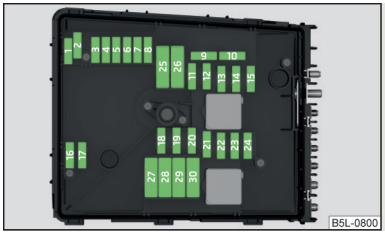

Fig. 204
Fuses

Read and observe ! and ! on page 196 first.

No.	Consumer
1	Not assigned
2	Automatic gearbox
3	Battery data module
4	ABS

No.	Consumer
5	Automatic gearbox
6	Not assigned
7	Power supply for terminal 15, starter
8	Radio, instrument cluster, telephone
9	Not assigned
10	Engine control unit
11	Aux. heating and ventilation
12	Databus
13	Engine control unit
14	Ignition
15	Lambda probe, fuel pump, glow plug system
16	Vehicle voltage control unit, right headlight, right tail light
17	Horn
18	Amplifier for digital sound processor
19	Windscreen wipers
20	Control valve for fuel pressure, high pressure pump
21	Lambda probe
22	Clutch pedal switch, brake pedal switch
23	Coolant pump, charge pressure control solenoid valve, changeover valve for radiator, fuel high-pressure pump
24	Active charcoal filter, exhaust gas recirculation valve, radiator fan
25	ABS
26	Vehicle voltage control unit, left headlight, left tail light
27	Glow plug system
28	Windscreen heater
29	Power to the internal fuse carrier
30	Terminal X[a)]

a) In order not to drain the battery unnecessarily when starting the engine, the electrical components of this terminal are automatically switched off.

Bulbs

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Some manual skills are required to change a bulb. For this reason, we recommend having bulbs replaced by a specialist garage or seeking other expert help in the event of any uncertainties.

- Switch off the ignition and the relevant lights before replacing a bulb.
- Faulty bulbs must only be replaced with the same type of bulbs. The designation is located on the light socket or the glass bulb.

A stowage compartment for replacement bulbs is located in a box under the floor covering in the luggage compartment.

We recommend having the headlight settings checked by a specialist garage after replacing a bulb in the low, high or fog beam.

In case of failure of a xenon gas discharge lamp or an LED diode, visit a specialist garage.

WARNING

- Always read and observe the warnings before completing any work in the engine compartment » page 165.
- Accidents can be caused if the road in front of the vehicle is not sufficiently illuminated and the vehicle cannot or can only be seen with difficulty by other road users.

WARNING (Continued)

- Bulbs H7 and H4 are pressurised and may burst when changed - there is a risk of injury. We therefore recommended wearing gloves and safety glasses when changing a bulb.
- Do not carry out any work on the Xenon gas discharge lamps - risk of death!

CAUTION

Do not take hold of the glass bulb with naked fingers (even the smallest amount of dirt reduces the working life of the light bulb). Use a clean cloth, napkin, or similar.

Note

- This Owner's Manual only describes the replacement of bulbs where it is possible to replace the bulbs on your own without any complications arising. Other bulbs must be replaced by a specialist garage.
- We recommend that a box of replacement bulbs always be carried in the vehicle. Replacement bulbs can be purchased from ŠKODAOriginal Accessories.

Bulb arrangement in the headlights

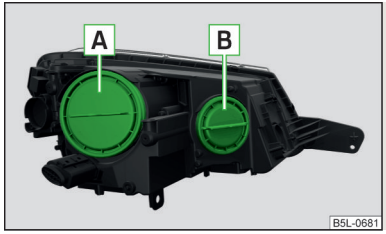

Fig. 205
Principle sketch: Front headlights

Read and observe ! and ! on page 199 first.

The vehicle is equipped with headlights with halogen lamps or with a xenon discharge lamp and a halogen bulb.

Bulb arrangement » Fig. 205

A Low beam with halogen bulb or xenon gas discharge lamp
B Main beam

Replace the bulb for the dipped and main beam (Halogen headlamp)

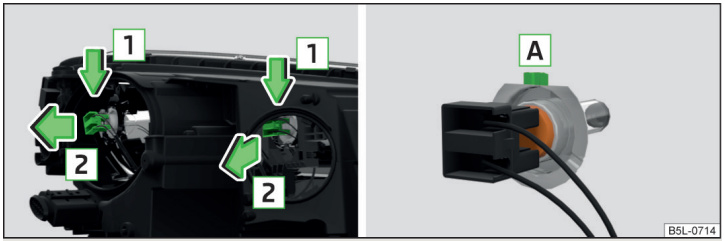

Fig. 206 **Replacing the bulb for low beam and main beam**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 199 first.

› Turn the respective protective cap » Fig. 205 *on page 200* counter-clockwise and remove.

When removing the cap, make sure that this does not fall into the engine compartment.

› Disconnect the relevant connector with the light bulb in the direction of arrow 1 » Fig. 206.
› Remove the connector to the bulb in the direction of arrow 2.
› Remove the connector.
› Insert the connector with the new bulb so that the fixing lug A adjusts the bulb into the recess on the reflector.
› Insert the respective protective cap » Fig. 205 *on page 200* and rotate it clockwise until it stops.

Note

We recommend you have the bulb replacement performed by a specialist garage.

Remove the protective grille for fog lights

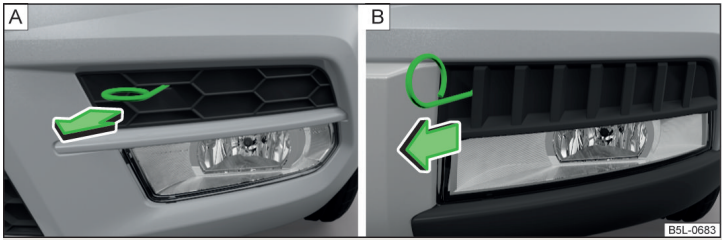

Fig. 207 **Guard: Version 1/version 2**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 199 first.

› Undo the protective grille in the direction of the arrow » Fig. 207 using the clamp for removing the wheel trims » page 182, *Vehicle tool kit*.
› Remove the protective grille.

Remove the protective grille for fog lights - sensor plug for parking assistance

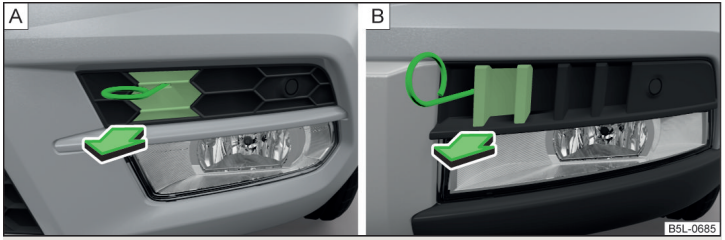

Fig. 208 **Guard: Version 1/version 2**

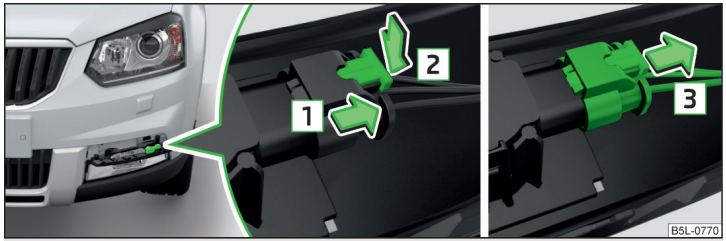

Fig. 209 **Remove the plug**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 199 first.

› Remove the plastic cover for the guard in the arrow direction » Fig. 208 using the bow to pull the full wheel covers » page 182, *Vehicle tool kit*.
› Remove the remaining part of the grille.
› Pull the latch out of the connector in the direction of arrow 1 » Fig. 209.
› Undo the latch on the connector in the direction of arrow 2.
› Remove the key in the direction of the arrow 3.

The connector is installed in reverse order.

Replacing the bulb for the fog lights

Fig. 210 **Principle sketch: Remove the number plate light / replace the bulb**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 199 first.

First remove the grille for the fog lights and before changing bulbs » Fig. 207 *on page 201* and / or » Fig. 208 *on page 201*.

Remove the headlight

› Unscrew the two bolts A » Fig. 210 with the screwdriver » page 182.
› Remove the headlight in the direction of arrow 1.
› Remove the headlight in the direction of arrow 2.

Replacing the light bulb

› Pull the plug on the lamp base.
› Turn the lamp socket to the stop in the direction of arrow 3 » Fig. 210 and pull it out.
› Insert the bulb holder with the new bulb into the headlight and turn counter to the direction of arrow 3 as far as the stop.
› Attach the connector on the lamp base.

Refit the headlight and grille

› Replace the fog light by inserting it in the opposite direction of the arrow 2 » Fig. 210 and tighten.
› Attach the connector on guard carefully » Fig. 209 *on page 201*[1)].
› Insert the protective grille and press it in.
› Replace the plastic cover and press into the guard » Fig. 208 *on page 201*[1)].

The protective grille must engage firmly.

! CAUTION

For vehicles with parking assistance, we recommend that after changing the light bulb in the fog lights, the system is checked by a specialist.

Replacing the bulb for the licence plate light

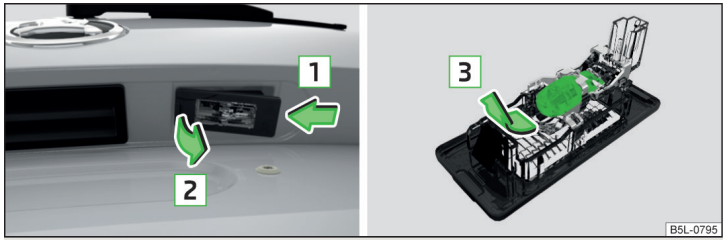

Fig. 211 **Remove the number plate light/replace the bulb**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 199 first.

› Open the boot lid.
› Push in the lamp in the direction of the arrow 1 » Fig. 211.

The lamp comes loose.

› Swivel out the lamp in the direction of the arrow 2 and remove it.
› Remove the faulty bulb from the holder in the direction of the arrow 3.
› Insert a new bulb into the holder.
› Reinsert the lamp in the opposite direction to the arrow 1.
› Push on the light until the spring clicks into place.

Check that the light is securely inserted.

Rear Light

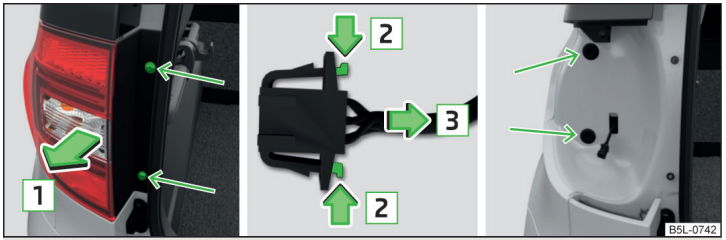

Fig. 212 **Remove light / pull out connector**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 199 first.

Removing

› Open the boot lid.
› Use the screwdriver from the tool kit » page 182, *Vehicle tool kit* to unscrew the lamp » Fig. 212.
› Grasp the light and carefully remove with shaky movements in the direction of arrow 1 » Fig. 212.
› Disconnect the plug connection by pressing the catches in direction of arrow 2 and by pulling them in direction of arrow 3.

[1)] Applies to vehicles with parking assistance system.

Fitting

› Insert the connector into the light and lock it securely.
› Insert the light into the mounts in the body » Fig. 212.
› Carefully press the light into the body so that the bolts 1 » Fig. 213 *on page 203* or » Fig. 214 *on page 203* on the light engage into the mounts on the body.
› Screw the light with the screws into place » Fig. 212.

Replacing bulbs in rear light

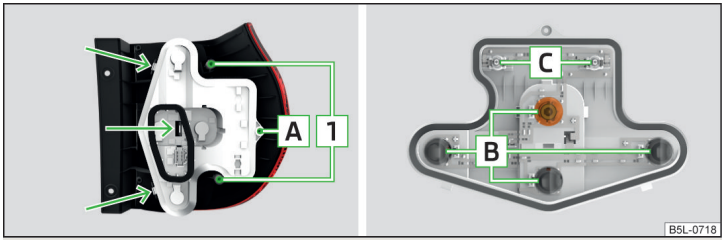

Fig. 213 **Inner part of the light: Ground light**

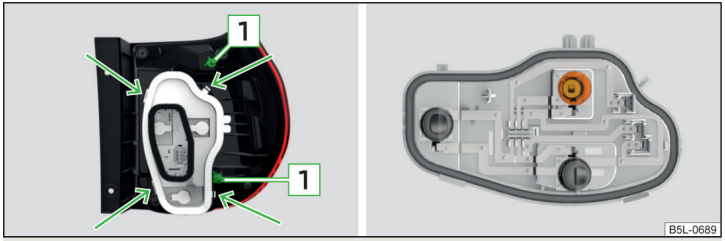

Fig. 214 **Inner part of the light: Light with LED diodes**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 199 first.

Ground light

› With the spanner from the vehicle tools unscrew the securing screw A » Fig. 213.
› Unlock the bulb holder using the locking latches in the areas » Fig. 213 marked with arrows and remove the bulb holder from the light.
› Turn the respective bulb B until it stops **counter-clockwise** and remove it from the bulb holder.
› Insert a new bulb B into the holder and turn **in a clockwise direction** to the stop.
› Pull bulb C out of the socket and insert a new bulb.
› Insert the bulb holder in the light.

The lamp holder must engage audibly.

Light with LED diodes

› Unlock the bulb holder using the locking latches in the areas » Fig. 214 marked with arrows and remove the bulb holder from the light.
› Turn the respective light bulb » Fig. 214 until it stops **counter-clockwise** and remove it from the bulb holder.
› Insert a new bulb into the holder and turn **in a clockwise direction** to the stop.
› Insert the bulb holder in the light.

The lamp holder must engage audibly.

Note

Visit a specialist garage if an LED diode is faulty.

Technical data

Technical data

Basic vehicle data

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

The details given in the vehicle's technical documentation always take precedence over the details in the Owner's Manual.

The listed performance values were determined without performance-reducing equipment, e.g. air conditioning system.

The values given have been determined in accordance with regulations and in conditions prescribed by legal or technical provisions for determining the operating and technical data of vehicles.

The values listed are for the basic model without optional equipment.

Vehicle characteristics

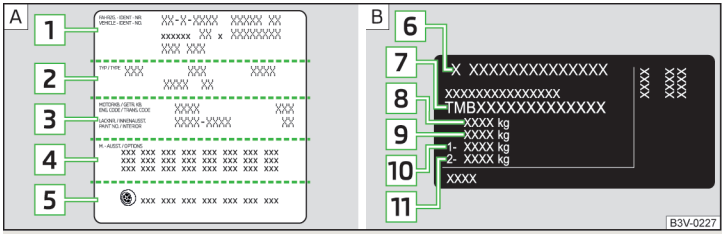

Fig. 215 **Vehicle data sticker/type plate**

Vehicle data sticker

The vehicle data sticker » Fig. 215 - A is located on the base of the luggage compartment and is also fixed into the service schedule.

The vehicle data sticker contains the following data.

1 Vehicle identification number (VIN)
2 Vehicle type
3 Gearbox code/paint number/interior equipment/engine output/engine code
4 Partial vehicle description
5 Approved tyre diameter in inches[1)]

The approved tyres and rim sizes for your vehicle are listed in the vehicle's technical documentation (the so called COC document) and this also states the declaration of conformity.

Type plate

The type plate » Fig. 215 - B is located at the bottom of the B-pillar on the right driver's side.

The type plate contains the following data.

6 Manufacturer
7 Vehicle identification number (VIN)
8 Maximum permissible gross weight
9 Maximum permissible towed weight (towing vehicle and trailer)

[1)] Only valid for some countries.

10 Maximum permissible front axle load
11 Maximum permissible rear axle load

Vehicle identification number (VIN)
The vehicle identification number - VIN (vehicle body number) is stamped into the engine compartment on the right hand suspension strut dome. This number is also located on a sign on the lower left hand edge below the windscreen (together with a VIN bar code), and on the type plate.

Engine number
The engine number (three-digit identifier and serial number) is stamped on the engine block.

Supplementary Information (applies to Russia)
The full type approval number of the means of transport is indicated in the registration documents, field 17.

Maximum permissible trailer weight
The listed maximum permissible trailer weight is only valid for altitudes up to 1000 m above sea level.

The engine output falls as altitude increases, as does the vehicle's climbing power. Therefore, for every additional 1000 m in height (or part), the maximum permissible towed weight must be reduced by 10%.

The towed weight is made up of the actual weights of the loaded towing vehicle and the loaded trailer.

! WARNING
Do not exceed the specified maximum permissible weights – risk of accident and damage!

Operating weight

The value represents the minimum operating weight without additional weight-increasing equipment, such as air conditioning system, spare wheel, or trailer hitch.

The specified operating weight is for orientation purposes only.

The operating weight also contains the weight of the driver (75 kg), the weight of the operating fluids, the tool kit, and a fuel tank filled to 90 % capacity.

Operating weight

Engine	Transmission	Operating weight (kg)
1.2 ltr./81 kW TSI	MG	1340
	DSG	1360
1.4 ltr./92 kW TSI	MG	1355
	DSG	1380
1.4 ltr./110 kW TSI	MG 4x4	1471
	DSG 4x4	1496
1.6 l./81 kW MPI	MG	1320
	AG	1345
1.8 ltr./112 kW TSI	DSG 4x4	1540
2.0 ltr./81 kW TDI CR	MG (EU4)	1420
	MG (EU6)	1452
	MG 4x4	1550
2.0 ltr./103 kW TDI CR	MG 4x4	1535
	DSG 4x4	1560
2.0 ltr./110 kW TDI CR	MG	1486
	MG 4x4	1565
	DSG 4x4	1585

i Note
If required, you can find out the precise weight of your vehicle at a specialist garage.

Payload

It is possible to calculate the approximate maximum payload from the difference between the permissible total weight and the operating weight.

The payload consists of the following weights.
- The weight of the passengers.
- The weight of all items of luggage and other loads.
- The weight of the roof, including the roof rack system.
- The weight of the equipment that is excluded from the operating weight.
- The trailer nose weight with trailer (max. 80 kg and 85 kg [1]).

[1] Applies to vehicles 4x4 with the 2.0 l/103 kW TDI CR and 2.0 L/110 kW TDI CR engine.

Measurement of fuel consumption and CO_2 emissions according to ECE Regulations and EU Directives

The data on fuel consumption and CO_2 emissions were not available at the time of going to press.

The data on fuel consumption and CO_2 emissions are given on the ŠKODA websites or in the sales and technical vehicle documentation.

The measurement of the intra-urban cycle begins with a cold start of the engine. Afterwards urban driving is simulated.

In the extra-urban driving cycle, the vehicle is accelerated and decelerated in all gears, corresponding to daily routine driving conditions. The driving speed varies between 0 and 120 km/h.

The calculation of the combined fuel consumption considers a weighting of about 37 % for the intra-urban cycle and 63 % for the extra-urban cycle.

Note

- The fuel consumption and emission levels given on the ŠKODA websites or in the commercial and technical vehicle documentation have been established in accordance with rules and under conditions that are set out by legal or technical rules for the determination of operational and technical data of motor vehicles.
- Depending on the extent of the equipment, the driving style, traffic conditions, weather influences and vehicle condition, consumption values can in practice result in fuel economy figures in the use of the vehicle that differ from the fuel consumption values listed on the ŠKODA websites or in the commercial and technical vehicle documentation.

Dimensions

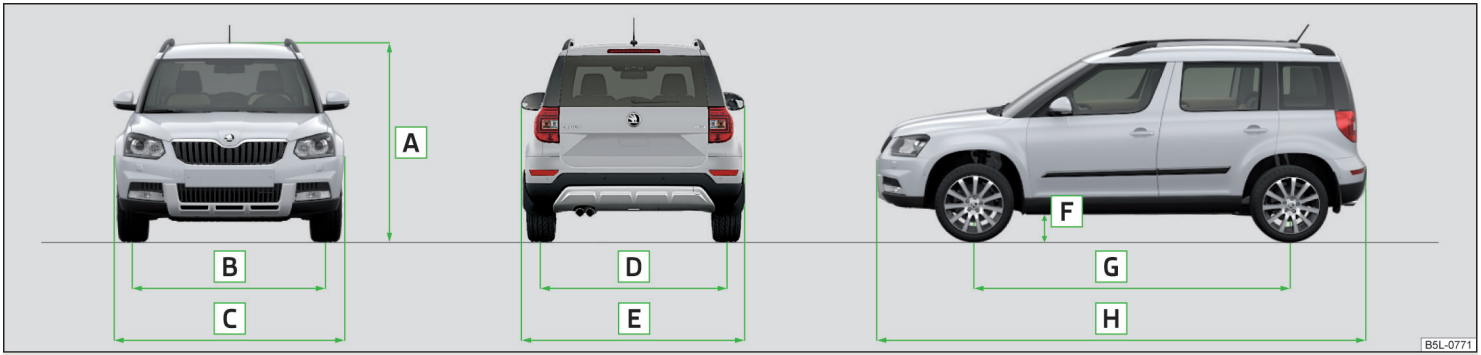

Fig. 216 **Principle sketch: Vehicle dimensions**

Vehicle dimensions for operating weight without driver (in mm)

» Fig. 216	Specification	Yeti	Yeti Outdoor
A	Height	1691	
B	Front track	1541	
C	Width	1793	
D	Rear track	1537	
E	Width including exterior mirror	1956	
F	Clearance	180	
G	Wheel base	2578	
H	Length	4222	

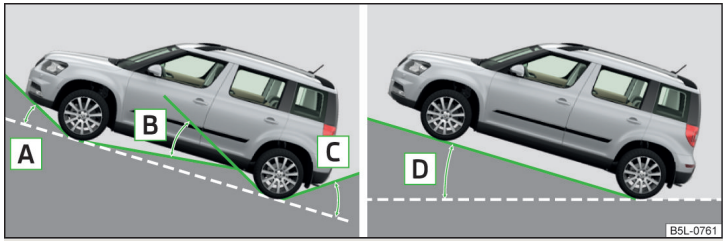

Fig. 217 **Principle sketch: Overhang angle and ramp angle / slope angle**

Angle » Fig. 217

- A Overhang angle, front
- B Ramp angle
- C Overhang angle, rear
- D Pitch angle / climbing ability

Overhang angle
The values shown indicate the maximum incline of an embankment, up which the vehicle can drive at a slow speed without collision of the bumper or underbody.

The values listed correspond to the maximum axle load, front or back.

Ramp angle
The angle indication determines the angle at which you can drive the vehicle over a ramp, at a slow speed, without the under body of the vehicle touching the ramp edge.

Pitch angle / climbing ability
The specification to which the vehicle can drive up a slope on its own (depending inter alia on the road surface and engine power).

The height gained over a distance of 100 m (slope) is specified in percent or degrees.

Engine	Transmission	Front overhang angle (°)	Rear overhang angle (°)	Ramp angle (°)	Slope angle (°) / climbing ability (%)
1.2 ltr./81 kW TSI	MG	19/17.1[a)]	32/30[a)]	19.6/17.2[a)]	24/44
	DSG	19/17.1[a)]	32/30[a)]	19.6/17.2[a)]	25/47 (26/49)[a)]
1.4 ltr./92 kW TSI	MG	19	32	19.6	27/52
	DSG	19	32	19.6	29/55
1.4 ltr./110 kW TSI	MG 4x4	19	32	19.6	30/57
	DSG 4x4	19	32	19.6	31/61
1.6 l./81 kW MPI	MG	19	32	19.6	22/40
	AG	19	32	19.6	45/100
1.8 ltr./112 kW TSI	DSG 4x4	19	32	19.6	29/55
2.0 ltr./81 kW TDI CR	MG (EU4, EU5)	19	32	19.6	29/55
	MG (EU6)	19/18[a)]	32/25.5[a)]	19.6/18.2[a)]	29/55 (31/59)[a)]
	MG 4x4	19	32	19.6	35/69

Engine	Transmission	Front overhang angle (°)	Rear overhang angle (°)	Ramp angle (°)	Slope angle (°) / climbing ability (%)
2.0 ltr./103 kW TDI CR	MG 4x4	19	32	19.6	31/60
	DSG 4x4	19	32	19.6	31/60
2.0 ltr./110 kW TDI CR	MG	19	32	19.6	41/86
	MG 4x4	19	32	19.6	39/80
	DSG 4x4	19	32	19.6	38/77

[a] Applies to vehicles with tyre size 205/55 R 16.

Vehicle-specific data depending on the engine

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

The values given have been determined in accordance with regulations and in conditions prescribed by legal or technical provisions for determining the operating and technical data of vehicles.

The emissions standard is detailed in the technical vehicle documentation as well as in the certificate of conformity (COC document), which can be obtained from a ŠKODA partner[a].

[a] Only valid for some countries and some models.

1.2 ltr. / 81 kW TSI engine

Output (kW/rpm)	81/4600-5600	
Maximum torque (Nm at rpm)	175/1400-4000	
Number of cylinders/displacement (cm^3)	4/1197	
Transmission	**MG**	**DSG**
Top speed (km/h)	179	178
Acceleration 0-100 km/h (s)	10.9	11.4

1.4 l/92 kW TSI engine

Output (kW/rpm)	92/5000-6000	
Maximum torque (Nm at rpm)	200/1400-4000	
Number of cylinders/displacement (cm^3)	4/1395	
Transmission	**MG**	**DSG**
Top speed (km/h)	187	186
Acceleration 0-100 km/h (s)	9.9	10.1

1.4 l/110 kW TSI engine

Output (kW/rpm)	110/5000-6000	
Maximum torque (Nm at rpm)	250/1500-3500	
Number of cylinders/displacement (cm^3)	4/1395	
Transmission	**MG 4x4**	**DSG 4x4**
Top speed (km/h)	195	191
Acceleration 0-100 km/h (s)	8.7	8.9

1.6 l/81 kW MPI engine

Output (kW/rpm)	81/5800	
Maximum torque (Nm at rpm)	155/3800	
Number of cylinders/displacement (cm^3)	4/1598	
Transmission	**MG**	**AG**
Top speed (km/h)	175	172
Acceleration 0-100 km/h (s)	11.8	13.3

1.8 ltr./112 kW TSI engine

Output (kW/rpm)	112/4300-6200
Maximum torque (Nm at rpm)	250/1500-4500
Number of cylinders/displacement (cm^3)	4/1789
Transmission	**DSG 4x4**
Top speed (km/h)	192
Acceleration 0-100 km/h (s)	9.0

2.0 ltr./81 kW TDI CR engine

Output (kW/rpm)	MG (EU4, EU5)	81/4200	
	MG (EU6), MG 4x4	81/3500	
Maximum torque (Nm at rpm)	MG (EU4, EU5)	250/1500-2500	
	MG (EU6), MG 4x4	250/1750-3000	
Number of cylinders/displacement (cm^3)	4/1968		
Transmission	**MG (EU4, EU5)**	**MG (EU6)**	**MG 4x4**
Top speed (km/h)	177	179	175
Acceleration 0-100 km/h (s)	11.6	11.7	12.2

2.0 ltr./103 kW TDI CR engine

Output (kW/rpm)	103/4200	
Maximum torque (Nm at rpm)	320/1750-2500	
Number of cylinders/displacement (cm^3)	4/1968	
Transmission	**MG 4x4**	**DSG 4x4**
Top speed (km/h)	190	187
Acceleration 0-100 km/h (s)	9.9	10.2

2.0 ltr./110 kW TDI CR engine

Output (kW/rpm)	110/3500		
Maximum torque (Nm at rpm)	340/1750-3000		
Number of cylinders/displacement (cm^3)	4/1968		
Transmission	**MG**	**MG 4x4**	**DSG 4x4**
Top speed (km/h)	199	195	192
Acceleration 0-100 km/h (s)	9.0	9.1	9.2

Index

A

B

C

E

F

S

T

U

V

W

X

Issued by: ŠKODA AUTO a.s.

ŠKODA Service App – ŠKODA service in your pocket

The application ŠKODA service is provided for Smartphones with Android or iPhone systems. This task is mainly to help you as a customer of ŠKODA AUTO in difficult situations when on the road.

My Dealer – select your preferred dealer and read about their current offer or ŠKODA news.

Assistance – Contact a breakdown recovery service, find the nearest dealer when on the road and use the service Parking Helper.

My car – the complete operating instructions and a summary list of all the warning lights for a quick overview, a guide for media systems and Quick Tips.

Ready for download in the AppStore for iOS and Google Play for Android.

ŠKODA Manual App – get to know your vehicle

The application ŠKODA Manual is designed for tablet users with the systems Android and iOS, who have an interest in getting to know the ŠKODA vehicle brand or already have one. The application contains the complete version of the electronic manual for all current models of the ŠKODA brand. Furthermore, it contains a list of all warning lights, a guide for media systems as well as a picture diagram of the Quick Tips.

Some of the main functions of the application include:

- Easy content navigation
- Easy content reading
- Full text search through the entire manual
- Tab for quick access to favourite chapter

Available on the App Store

GET IT ON Google play

www.skoda-auto.com

Návod k obsluze
Yeti anglicky 11.2015